HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Software Technical Reference







HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 9/2008

Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, PostScript®, and the Acrobat® logo are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple and the Apple logo are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

ENERGY STAR® is a registered mark owned by the U.S. government.

Intel® and Pentium® are trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

Linux is a U.S. registered trademark of Linus Torvalds.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Microsoft® Windows NT®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Windows Vista is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction	1
Software technical reference overview	2
Product comparison	3
Product features	3
Documentation availability and localization	5
Software availability and localization	10
Printing-system software on the Web	11
In-box printing-system software CDs	11
CD versions	11

2 Software description

Introduction	15
Windows printing-system software	16
Printing system and installer	16
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems	16
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide	16
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system CD browser	18
Installer features	19
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series print drivers	20
Select the best print driver	
Complete LaserJet printing system (Recommended Install)	21
HP PCL 6	22
HP PS Universal Print Driver	23
HP print drivers	23
Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems	24
HP driver diagnostic printer check tool	26
Advanced color use	27
HP ColorSphere toner	27
HP ImageREt 3600	27
Media selection	27
Color options	27

	Standard red-green-blue (sRGB)	27
Match col	lors	29
	Use HP ToolboxFX to print the Microsoft Office Basic Colors palette	29
HP Basic	Color Match tool	30
	Use HP ToolboxFX to download the HP Basic Color Match tool	30
HP Easy	Printer Care	31
HP Toolb	oxFX	32
	HP ToolboxFX overview	32
	The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) and HP ToolboxFX	32
	Start HP ToolboxFX	33
	Structure	33
	Opening screen	33
	System requirements	33
	Key features	33
	HP product pop-up alert messages	34
	System-tray icon alert	34
	E-mail alert	34
	HP ToolboxFX folders	35
	Status folder	35
	Device Status	36
	Supplies Status	37
	Device Configuration	37
	Network Summary	40
	Print Info Pages	41
	Color Usage Job Log	42
	Event Log	42
	Alerts folder	43
	Set up Status Alerts	44
	Set up E-mail Alerts	
	Product Information folder	
	Demonstration Pages	51
	Help folder	
	Troubleshooting	
	Paper and Print Media	
	Color Printing Tools	
	Animated Demonstrations	
	User Guide	56
	Device Settings folder	
	Device Information	
	Paper Handling	
	Printing	
	PCL5	
	PostScript	
	Print Quality	

Print Density	66
Paper Types	67
Extended Print Modes screen	69
System Setup	73
Save/Restore Settings	74
Password	75
Network Settings folder	
Network Summary	77
IPv4 Configuration	79
IPv6 Configuration	80
Network Identification	80
Advanced	81
SNMP	83
Other screens	84
About HP ToolboxFX dialog box	84
HP Instant Support	85
Support and Troubleshooting	85
Product Registration	85
Shop for Supplies	85
HP Embedded Web Server	86
Status tab	
Device Status	87
Supplies Status	87
Device Configuration	88
Network Summary	
Print Info Pages	
Color Usage Job Log	
Event Log	
Settings tab	
Device Information	95
Paper Handling	
Printing	
PCL5c	
PostScript	
Print Quality	100
Print Density	101
Paper Types	101
Extended Print Modes	102
System Setup	105
Service	105
Password	106
Networking tab	106
Network Summary	106
IPv4 Configuration	106

IPv6 Configuration	
Network Identification	
Advanced	109
SNMP	111
HP Customer Participation Program	113
Optional software	
Universal Print Driver	
Basic Color Match	
HP Easy Printer Care	114
HP Smart Web Printing	
Font support	
Basic fonts	116
Default fonts	116

3 Install Windows printing-system components

Introduction	123
Supported operating systems for Windows	124
Windows operating system requirements	124
Installation overview	126
Product configurations	126
Software installation types for Windows	127
Install drivers using a CD	128
Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions	130
Animated Getting Started Guide (GSG)	130
Setup and installation instructions	130
Animated GSG dialog boxes	131
Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows	139
Install optional software	155
Install More Software	156
Recommended Install	156
Universal Print Driver	157
Basic Color Match	157
HP Easy Printer Care	157
HP Smart Web Printing	157
Marketing Resource software	158
User uninstall software	159
Uninstall instructions for Windows	159
Uninstall a Recommended or Express installation	159
Use the product software Uninstall component (recommended)	159
Use the Windows Add or Remove Programs component	159
Use the printing-system software CD	160
Uninstall a print-driver only installation	160

4 HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows

Introduction		
Change the print driver setti	ngs for Windows	164
Printing Preference	ces driver tabs	164
Properties driver	tabs	
Help system		
"What's this?" He	lp	
Constraint messa	ges	166
Advanced tab features		
Paper/Output sett	lings	168
Сору С	Count setting	168
Graphic settings .		168
Image	Color Management settings	169
TrueTy	pe Font settings	169
Document Option	s	
Advanc	ed Printing Features	
PostSc	ript Options (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)	170
	PostScript Output option	170
	TrueType Font Download option	170
	PostScript Language Level	170
	Send PostScript Error Handler	17(
Printer	Features	17 ²
	Print All Text as Black	17 <i>′</i>
	Send TrueType as Bitmap (PCL 6 only)	171
	Raster Compression (PCL 6 only)	171
	Print Data Optimization (PCL 6 only)	171
	Alternative Letterhead Mode (PCL 6 only)	172
Layout	Options	173
Printing Shortcuts tab		174
General Everyday	/ Printing (PCL 6 only)	175
Envelopes (PCL 6	δ only)	177
Cardstock/Heavy	(PCL 6 only)	178
Glossy/Presentati	on (PCL 6 only)	180
Snapshot Photos	(PCL 6 only)	18 [,]
Labels (PCL 6 on	ly)	
Transparencies (F	PCL 6 only)	
Factory Defaults .		
User Guide Print	Settings (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)	184
Document preview	w image	
Paper/Quality tab features		188
Paper Options		
	size:	
Custon	ו Paper Size	190
	Name	

Paper Size	190
Units	191
Custom width and height control limits	191
Paper source:	192
Paper type:	192
Special pages	194
Covers	194
Print pages on different paper	195
Document preview image	196
Print Quality group box	196
Print Quality drop-down menu	196
HP real life technologies (PCL 6 only)	196
Remove red eye checkbox (PCL 6 only)	197
Gloss Level (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)	197
Gloss Level driver settings	197
Effects tab features	198
Resizing Options group box	198
Actual Size setting	199
Print Document On setting	199
Scale to Fit option	199
% of actual size option	200
Document preview image	200
Watermarks group box	201
Current watermarks	202
Watermark message	202
Message angle	203
Font attributes	203
Name drop-down menu	203
Color drop-down menu	203
Shading drop-down menu	
Size spin box	205
Style drop-down menu	205
Default settings	205
Finishing tab features	206
Document Options	206
Print on Both Sides check box	207
Print on both sides automatically	207
Manually printing on both sides	208
Flip Pages Up option	209
Booklet layout drop-down menu	210
Book and booklet printing	210
Printing a booklet	210
Printing a book	211
Pages per Sheet drop-down menu	

Print Page Borders check box	211
Page Order drop-down menu	211
Document preview image	212
Orientation group box	212
Portrait option button	212
Landscape option button	
Rotate by 180 degrees check box	
Mirror Image check box (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)	213
Color tab features	
Color Options	
Automatic	215
Manual	215
Print in Grayscale	216
Color Themes	217
Document preview image	217
Services tab features	
Internet Services	
Device Settings tab features	219
Form to Tray Assignment	220
Font Substitution Table	
External Fonts	
Installing external fonts	222
Removing external fonts	222
Installable Options	223
Allow Manual Duplexing	
Printer Memory	
HP PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings	
Available PostScript Memory	224
Output Protocol	224
Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job	
Send Ctrl-D After Each Job	
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray	
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray	225
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts	225
Job Timeout	225
Wait Timeout	
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline	225
Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap	225
Postscript Passthrough	226
JPEG Passthrough	
About tab features	

5 Macintosh Software and Utilities

Introduction	229
Supported operating systems for Macintosh	230
Macintosh system requirements	230
Hardware requirements	230
Supported print drivers for Macintosh	230
Change print-driver settings for Macintosh	230
Supported software components for Macintosh	231
Software components for Macintosh	231
Software component availability for Macintosh	232
Printing-system software	233
Availability	233
Printing-system software on the Web	233
Printing-system software	233
In-box printing-system software CDs	234
Macintosh partition	234
CD versions	234
Macintosh installation instructions	236
Macintosh component descriptions	236
HP LaserJet PPDs	236
PDEs	236
HP EWS Gateway	236
Install notes (Readme file)	237
Install the Macintosh printing system	237
General installation for Macintosh operating systems	237
Detailed Mac OS X installation	238
Main Install dialog sequence	238
Printer setup	240
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4	241
Troubleshooting Notes	241
Supported utilities for Macintosh	243
HP EWS Gateway	243
Use features in the Macintosh printer driver	244
Create and use printing presets in Macintosh	244
Resize documents or print on a custom paper size	244
Use watermarks	244
Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh	245
Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)	245
Use the Services menu	246
Macintosh readme	247
Mac OS X printer queue setup for your HP LaserJet printer	247
Troubleshooting Notes	247

6 Engineering details

Introduction	249
Steps to Install HP Web Jetadmin 10.0	250
Supported paper tables	251
Special paper guidelines table	253
Sizes (min & max) and supported paper by tray	254
Media attributes and commands	256
Media types and sizes	256
Custom paper sizes	258
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Install Notes	259
I. INTRODUCTION	259
PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT	259
WHO NEEDS THIS SOFTWARE?	260
OVERVIEW OF THE PRINTING-SYSTEM COMPONENTS	260
II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION	262
KNOWN ISSUES AND WORKAROUNDS	262
III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS	263
INSTALL SOFTWARE ON XP AND WINDOWS VISTA	263
IV. UNINSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS	264
WINDOWS UNINSTALLER	264
ADD/REMOVE PROGRAMS	265
V. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE	265
VI. LEGAL STATEMENTS	265
TRADEMARK NOTICES	265
WARRANTY AND COPYRIGHT	265
Troubleshooting	267
Port communication	267
Overview	267
USB port connections	267
Device conflicts in Windows	267
Open the Windows Device Manager	267
Check for product conflicts	268
Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving product conflicts	268
Installed product	268
File to E-mail utility	269
Manual scrubber	269
E-mail	269
	271

List of tables

Table 1-1	Software technical reference overview	2
Table 1-2	User documentation availability and localization	5
Table 1-3	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software components by installation method	10
Table 2-1	Drivers included with the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software	24
Table 2-2	Supported pop-up alerts for HP ToolboxFX	45
Table 2-3	Standard print modes	67
Table 2-4	Print Modes — Fusing	69
Table 2-5	Print Modes — Transfer	70
Table 2-6	Print Modes — Duplex Transfer	70
Table 2-7	Print Modes — Toner	70
Table 2-8	Optimize modes	71
Table 2-9	Network Identification screen – Text entries	80
Table 2-10	Advanced Network Settings options and settings	82
Table 2-11	SNMP options and settings	83
Table 2-12	HP ToolboxFX – Other screens	84
Table 2-13	Network Identification screen – Text entries	108
Table 2-14	Advanced Network Settings options and settings	110
Table 2-15	Default fonts	116
Table 2-16	Additional postscript emulation fonts	118
Table 3-1	Supported operating systems for Windows	124
Table 3-2	Printing-system software components installed for each installation method	128
Table 4-1	General Everyday printing options	175
Table 4-2	Envelopes printing options	178
Table 4-3	Cardstock/Heavy printing options	178
Table 4-4	Glossy/Presentation printing options	180
Table 4-5	Snapshot printing options	181
Table 4-6	Labels printing options	
Table 4-7	Transparencies printing options	183
Table 4-8	User Guide Print Settings – HP PS Universal Print Driver only	185
Table 4-9	Tray 1 and Tray 2 specifications	191
Table 4-10	Paper type: – Type is: supported paper types and associated engine speeds	192
Table 4-11	HP real life technologies	196
Table 4-12	Watermark color values	203
Table 4-13	Page orientation	210

Table 4-14	Manual color options	216
Table 5-1	Change print-driver settings for Macintosh	230
Table 5-2	Software components for Macintosh	231
Table 5-3	Software component availability for Macintosh	232
Table 5-4	Adding a printer in Macintosh operating systems	237
Table 6-1	Supported paper sizes	251
Table 6-2	Supported envelopes and postcards	251
Table 6-3	Supported paper attributes	256
Table 6-4	Tray 1 and Tray 2 specifications	258

List of figures

Figure 2-1	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide - Main screen	17
Figure 2-2	Installation software CD browser	18
Figure 2-3	HP product alert – Load Paper pop-up message	34
Figure 2-4	HP ToolboxFX Device Status screen	36
Figure 2-5	HP ToolboxFX Supplies Status screen	37
Figure 2-6	HP ToolboxFX Device Configuration screen (1 of 2)	38
Figure 2-7	HP ToolboxFX Device Configuration screen (2 of 2)	38
Figure 2-8	HP ToolboxFX Network Summary screen – Status folder	40
Figure 2-9	HP ToolboxFX Print Info Pages screen	41
Figure 2-10	HP ToolboxFX Color Usage Job Log screen	42
Figure 2-11	HP ToolboxFX Event Log screen	43
Figure 2-12		
Figure 2-13	HP ToolboxFX Set up Status Alerts screen	44
Figure 2-14	HP ToolboxFX Set up E-mail Alerts screen	49
Figure 2-15	HP ToolboxFX Demonstration Pages screen	51
Figure 2-16	HP ToolboxFX Troubleshooting screen	53
Figure 2-17	HP ToolboxFX Paper and Print Media screen	54
Figure 2-18	HP ToolboxFX Color Printing Tools screen	55
Figure 2-19	HP ToolboxFX Animated Demonstrations screen	56
Figure 2-20	HP ToolboxFX User Guide screen	57
Figure 2-21	HP ToolboxFX Device Information screen	58
Figure 2-22	HP ToolboxFX Paper Handling screen	59
Figure 2-23	HP ToolboxFX Printing screen	61
Figure 2-24	HP ToolboxFX PCL5 screen	63
Figure 2-25	•	
Figure 2-26	HP ToolboxFX Print Quality screen	65
Figure 2-27	•	
Figure 2-28	HP ToolboxFX Paper Types screen	67
Figure 2-29	HP ToolboxFX Extended Print Modes screen (1 of 2)	69
Figure 2-30	HP ToolboxFX Extended Print Modes screen (2 of 2)	71
Figure 2-31	HP ToolboxFX System Setup screen	73
Figure 2-32	HP ToolboxFX Save/Restore Settings screen	74
Figure 2-33	HP ToolboxFX Password screen	75
Figure 2-34	HP ToolboxFX Network Settings screen	77

Figure 2-35	HP ToolboxFX Network Summary screen – Network Settings folder	
Figure 2-36	HP ToolboxFX IPv4 Configuration screen	
Figure 2-37	HP ToolboxFX IPv6 Configuration screen	80
Figure 2-38	HP ToolboxFX Network Identification screen	81
Figure 2-39	HP ToolboxFX Advanced screen	
Figure 2-40	HP ToolboxFX SNMP screen	
Figure 2-41	About HP ToolboxFX screen	85
Figure 2-42	HP EWS Device Status screen	
Figure 2-43	HP EWS Supplies Status screen	
Figure 2-44	HP EWS Device Configuration screen (1 of 2)	89
Figure 2-45	HP EWS Device Configuration screen (2 of 2)	
Figure 2-46	HP EWS Network Summary screen – Status tab (1 of 2)	
Figure 2-47	HP EWS Network Summary screen – Status tab (2 of 2)	
Figure 2-48	HP EWS Print Info Pages screen	
Figure 2-49	HP EWS Color Usage Job Log screen	
Figure 2-50	HP EWS Event Log screen	
Figure 2-51	HP EWS Device Information screen	
Figure 2-52	HP EWS Paper Handling screen	
Figure 2-53	HP EWS Printing screen	
Figure 2-54	HP EWS PCL5c screen	
Figure 2-55	HP EWS PostScript screen	
Figure 2-56	HP EWS Print Quality screen	100
Figure 2-57	HP EWS Print Density screen	101
Figure 2-58	HP EWS Paper Types screen	102
Figure 2-59	HP EWS Extended Print Modes screen (1 of 2)	103
Figure 2-60	HP EWS Extended Print Modes screen (2 of 2)	103
Figure 2-61	HP EWS System Setup screen	105
Figure 2-62	HP EWS Service screen	105
Figure 2-63	HP EWS Password screen	106
Figure 2-64	HP EWS IPv4 Configuration screen	107
Figure 2-65	HP EWS IPv6 Configuration screen	108
Figure 2-66	HP EWS Network Identification screen	109
Figure 2-67	HP EWS Advanced screen	110
Figure 2-68	HP EWS SNMP screen	111
Figure 3-1	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Software Installation Types	127
Figure 3-2	Animated GSG – Welcome screen	131
Figure 3-3	Animated GSG – Select your product screen	131
Figure 3-4	Animated GSG – Walkaround screen	132
Figure 3-5	Animated GSG – Index screen	132
Figure 3-6	Animated GSG – Prepare a site for the printer	133
Figure 3-7	Animated GSG – Product dimensions screen	133
Figure 3-8	Animated GSG – Unpack the product screen	134
Figure 3-9	Animated GSG – Install the 250-sheet tray	134
Figure 3-10	Animated GSG – Remove all orange shipping tapes screen	135

Figure 3-11	Animated GSG – Prepare the print cartridges	135
Figure 3-12	Animated GSG – Load paper screen	136
Figure 3-13	Animated GSG – Turn on the product screen	136
Figure 3-14	Animated GSG – Set language (if necessary) screen	137
Figure 3-15	Animated GSG – Select installation option screen	137
Figure 3-16	Animated GSG – Install the product software – Network screen	138
Figure 3-17	Animated GSG – Install the product software – USB screen	138
Figure 3-18	Welcome! - Select Install to begin installing your new HP device (launch pad)	139
Figure 3-19	Recommended Install – Please Allow All HP Install Wizard Processes	140
Figure 3-20	Recommended Install – Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window	140
Figure 3-21	Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – Recommended Software Package	141
Figure 3-22	Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – Automatic Software Updates FAQ	142
Figure 3-23	Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – HP Privacy Policy	142
Figure 3-24	Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window - Details on the Internet Connection	
Capabilities		143
Figure 3-25	Recommended Install (Advanced) – Automatically Check for Updates window	144
Figure 3-26	Recommended Install (Advanced) – End User License Agreement window	144
Figure 3-27	Recommended Install (Advanced) – Thank you for buying another HP product window	145
Figure 3-28	Connection Type window	146
Figure 3-29	Connect your device now window	147
Figure 3-30	Identify a printer window	148
Figure 3-31	Firewall Notice window	149
Figure 3-32	Printer Not Found dialog	150
Figure 3-33	Printers Found window	151
Figure 3-34	Auto Firmware Downloader window	152
Figure 3-35	Restart window	152
Figure 3-36	Congratulations! Software Installation is complete window (Resting Pad)	153
Figure 3-37	Sign up now	154
Figure 3-38	Register Now	154
Figure 3-39	Welcome Back! window	155
Figure 3-40	Install More Software window	156
Figure 3-41	Welcome back!	160
Figure 4-1	A typical constraint message	166
Figure 4-2	Advanced tab – PCL 6	167
Figure 4-3	Advanced tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver	167
Figure 4-4	Printing Shortcuts tab – PCL 6	174
Figure 4-5	Printing Shortcuts tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver	174
Figure 4-6	Document preview image	187
Figure 4-7	Paper/Quality tab – PCL 6	188
Figure 4-8	Paper/Quality tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver	188
Figure 4-9	Paper Options group box	189
Figure 4-10	Print/Quality tab – Custom Paper Size dialog box	190
Figure 4-11	Type is: box	192
Figure 4-12	Paper/Quality tab – Special pages – Covers	194

Figure 4-13	Special pages – Print pages on different paper	. 195
Figure 4-14	Paper/Quality tab – Print Quality group box	. 196
Figure 4-15	Effects tab	. 198
Figure 4-16	Effects tab – Resizing Options group box	. 199
Figure 4-17	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to Fit off (left) and on (right)	. 200
Figure 4-18	Effects tab – Watermarks group box	. 201
Figure 4-19	Effects tab – Watermark Details box	. 201
Figure 4-20	Finishing tab	. 206
Figure 4-21	Finishing tab – Document Options group box	. 207
Figure 4-22	Finishing tab – Print on Both Sides instruction windodw	. 209
Figure 4-23	Page-order preview image	. 212
Figure 4-24	Finishing tab – Orientation group box	. 212
Figure 4-25	Color tab	. 214
Figure 4-26	Color tab – Color Options group box	. 215
Figure 4-27	Color tab – Color Settings dialog box	. 215
Figure 4-28	Color tab – Color Themes group box	. 217
Figure 4-29	Services tab	. 218
Figure 4-30	Device Settings tab – PCL 6	. 219
Figure 4-31	Device Settings tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver(1 of 2)	. 220
Figure 4-32	Device Settings tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver(2 of 2)	. 220
Figure 4-33	Font Substitution Table	. 221
Figure 4-34	HP Font Installer dialog box	. 222
Figure 4-35	About tab	. 227
Figure 5-1	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series CD-ROM icon	. 238
Figure 5-2	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series dialog	. 238
Figure 5-3	Authenticate dialog	. 238
Figure 5-4	License Agreement	. 239
Figure 5-5	Agree or Disagree dialog	. 239
Figure 5-6	Installing dialog	. 239
Figure 5-7	Connect USB Now dialog	. 240
Figure 5-8	Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Install Notes	. 240

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This Software Technical Reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the printing-system software for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printers.

This document is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, Management Information Systems (MIS) personnel, and end users, as appropriate.

NOTE: This STR describes software that is shipped on the software CD that comes with the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printers. This STR does *not* describe drivers that will become available on the Web.

The following information is included in this technical reference:

- Overview of software and platforms
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of problems that can arise with the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, and known solutions to those problems
- NOTE: An addendum to this STR describes system modification information, including file lists and changes to registry keys.

Topics:

- Software technical reference overview
- Product comparison
- Documentation availability and localization
- Software availability and localization

Software technical reference overview

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content	
Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	This chapter contains basic information about the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer and its software:	
	Overview of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer	
	• Printing-system software overview. This includes the following topics:	
	System requirements	
	 Operating-system support 	
	Availability	
	HP LaserJet software documentation	
Chapter 2, Software description	This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.	
	This chapter also contains general information about other software features, including the following topics:	
	HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS)	
	HP ToolboxFX	
Chapter 3, Install Windows printing-system components	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer in Microsoft® Windows® operating systems by using various installation methods.	
Chapter 4, HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows	This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP drivers for Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows® XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista®.	
Chapter 5, Macintosh software and utilities	This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer in Macintosh operating systems and how to use Macintosh features.	
Chapter 6, Engineering details	This chapter contains information about the following special topics:	
	Troubleshooting	
	Media attributes	
	Firmware upgrades	
	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printing-System Install Notes	

For the location of information within chapters, see the table of contents. An index is provided in this STR.

Additional detailed information about the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software is published in an addendum to this STR. The following information is available only in the addendum:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as changes to the registry and registry keys

Product comparison

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer

- Prints up to 21 pages per minute (ppm) on letter- and A4-sized paper.
- 50-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1) and 250-sheet input tray (tray 2)
- Optional 250-sheet input tray (tray 3) (standard on HP Color LaserJet CP2025x)
- Hi-Speed universal serial bus (USB) 2.0 port
- Built-in networking to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks (HP Color LaserJet CP2025n, HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn, and HP Color LaserJet CP2025x)
- Automatic duplexer (HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn and HP Color LaserJet CP2025x)

Product features

Print	• Prints up to 21 pages per minute (ppm) on letter-size paper.	
	• Prints at 600 dots per inch (dpi).	
	 Includes adjustable settings to optimize print quality. 	
	• The print cartridges use HP ColorSphere toner. For information about the number of pages the cartridges can print, see www.hp.com/go/pageyield . Actual yield depends on specific use.	
	 Offers automatic duplexing (HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn and HP Color LaserJet CP2025x only). 	
Memory	Includes 128-megabyte (MB) random-access memory (RAM).	
Supported operating	Macintosh	
systems	Mac OS X V10.3.9 and later	
	Windows	
	Express Install only	
	 Windows 2000 	

- Windows XP (64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Windows Vista Starter
- Express and Recommended Install
 - Windows XP (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (64-bit)
- Not Supported
 - Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
 - Windows Server 2000

Paper handling	• Tray 1 (multipurpose tray) holds up to 50 sheets of paper or 10 envelopes.	
	• Tray 2 holds up to 250 sheets of paper.	
	Optional Tray 3 holds up to 250 sheets of paper.	
	• Output bin holds up to 125 sheets of paper.	
Printer driver features	 ImageREt 3600 produces 3600 dpi print quality for fast, high-quality printing of business text and graphics. 	
Interface connections	Includes a Hi-Speed USB 2.0 port.	
	 Built-in networking to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks. 	
Environmental features	 To determine the ENERGY STAR® qualification status for this product, see the Product Data Sheet or Specifications Sheet. 	
Economical printing	Provides N-up printing (printing more than one page on a sheet).	
	• The print driver provides the option to manually print on both sides.	
Supplies	Uses print cartridges with HP ColorSphere toner.	
Accessibility	Online user guide is compatible with text screen-readers.	
	• Print cartridges can be installed and removed by using one hand.	
	• All doors and covers can be opened by using one hand.	

Documentation availability and localization

The documentation in the following table is available for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Table 1-2 User documentation availability and localization

Document name	Languages	Location
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	English	The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series
Printer User Guide	Arabic	Printer User Guide is available in electronic format on the HP Color
	Bulgarian	LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing system software CD.
	Catalan	
	Chinese (Simplified)	
	Chinese (Traditional)	
	Croatian	
	Czech	
	Danish	
	Dutch	
	Estonian	
	Finnish	
	French	
	German	
	Greek	
	Hebrew	
	Hungarian	
	Indonesian (Bahasa)	

Table 1-2 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Location
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	Italian	The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series
Printer User Guide (cont)	Japanese	 Printer User Guide is available in electronic format on the HP Color
	Kazakh	 LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing- system software CD.
	Korean	
	Latvian	_
	Lithuanian	_
	Norwegian	_
	Polish	_
	Portuguese (Brazilian)	_
	Romanian	_
	Russian	_
	Serbian	_
	Spanish	_
	Slovak	_
	Slovenian	_
	Swedish	_
	Thai	_
	Turkish	
	Ukranian	
	Vietnamese	_

Document name	Languages	Location
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	English	The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series
Printer Getting Started Guide	French	Printer Getting Started Guide is available in hard copy and comes in th
	Italian	box with your HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.
	• German	The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series
	Spanish	printing-system software CD also includes an animated version of the
	Catalan	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Getting Started Guide.
	• Portuguese (Brazilian)	
	Dutch	
	Hebrew	
	English	
	Danish	
	• Finnish	
	Norwegian	
	Swedish	
	Lithuanian	
	Latvian	
	• Estonian	
	English	
	Arabic	
	Turkish	
	Greek	
	Russian	
	• Kazakh	
	Ukranian	
	Bulgarian	
	• French	
	English	
	Polish	
	Hungarian	
	Czech	
	Croatian	
	Romanian	
	Slovenian	
	 Slovak 	
	Serbian	

7

Table 1-2 User documentation availability and localization (continued)

Document name	Languages	Location
<i>HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series</i> <i>Printer Getting Started Guide</i> (cont)	 English Thai Indonesian (Bahasa) Korean Simplified Chinese Traditional Chinese Japanese Vietnamese 	
HP Paper and Print Media Guide	English Arabic	HP Paper and Print Media Guide is included on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing-system
	Bulgarian	software CD.
	Catalan	
	Czech	
	Danish	
	German	
	Greek	
	Spanish	
	Estonian	
	Finnish	
	French	
	Hebrew	
	Croatian	
	Hungarian	
	Indonesian (Bahasa)	
	Italian	
	Japanese	

Document name	Languages	Location
HP Paper and Print Media Guide (cont)	Kazakh	HP Paper and Print Media Guide is included on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing-system software CD.
	Korean	
	Lituanian	
	Latvian	
	Dutch	
	Norwegian	
	Polish	
	Portuguese (Brazilian)	
	Romanian	
	Russian	
	Slovak	
	Slovenian	
	Serbian	
	Swedish	
	Thai	
	Turkish	
	Ukrainian	
	Vietnamese	
	Simplified Chinese	
	Traditional Chinese	

Software availability and localization

Download the printing-system software from the Web, or order it on a CD from HP fulfillment centers.

NOTE: This document describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

The following table lists the availability of HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer software components by installation method.

	Recommended Install	Express Install	Add Printer ¹
Supported Windows operating systems			
Windows XP 32-bit	Х	Х	Х
Windows XP 64-bit	Х	Х	Х
Windows Vista 32-bit	Х	Х	X
Windows Vista 64-bit	Х	Х	Х
Windows 2000		Х	Х
Windows Server 2003 32-bit		Х	Х
Windows Server 2003 64-bit			X ²
Components installed			
HP PCL 6 print driver	Х	Х	Х
HP PS Universal Print Driver			X ³
HP ToolboxFX w/Alerts	Х		
SNP Alerts		Х	Х
Screen fonts	Х		
Shop for HP supplies (desktop shortcut)	x		
Customer Participation Program 9.0	x		
HP Update	Х		
Warranty Reminder (timed pop-up)	Х		

¹ An Add-Printer Installation is supported, however, HP recommends using the Express Install option.

² The 64-bit HP PCL 6 driver can be found on the root of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software CD.

³ The 32-bit and 64-bit HP PS Universal Print Drivers found on the following Web site: <u>www.hp.com/go/</u> <u>ljcp2020series_software</u>. A link to this web site is available on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software CD under the Install More Software option.

Available from

Components

HP.com — links from Install More Software button on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software CD	HP PS Universal Print Driver	
	Easy Printer Care	
	Basic Color Match tool (Windows Vista and XP only)	
	HP Smart Web Printing (Windows Vista and XP only)	
	Marketing Resource Software (Windows Vista and XP only)	

Topics:

- Printing-system software on the Web
- <u>In-box printing-system software CDs</u>

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/ljcp2020series_software

In-box printing-system software CDs

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer contains a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD is divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating platforms:

- MS Windows
- Macintosh

Each partition includes the necessary software and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

CD versions

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD is available in four versions, each of which contains printing-system software in various languages:

- Americas/ Western Europe
 - EN = English
 - CA = Catalan (Català)
 - HE = Hebrew
 - IT = Italian (Italiano)

- ES = Spanish (Español)
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- FR = French (Français)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)

Northern Europe

- EN = English
- ET = Estonian (English driver)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- LV = Latvian (English driver)
- LT = Lithuanian (English driver)
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)

• Eastern Europe

- EN = English
- AR = Arabic
- BG = Bulgarian (English driver)
- CS = Czech (Cesky)
- HR = Croatian (English driver)
- FR = French (Français)
- EL = Greek
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- KK = Kazakh (English driver)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- RO = Romanian (English driver)
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SR = Serbian (English driver)
- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian (English driver)

- TR = Turkish (Turkçe)
- UK = Ukrainian (English driver)

• Asia Pacific

- EN = English
- JA = Japanese
- ID = Indonesia (Bahasa) (English driver)
- KO = Korean
- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese
- TH = Thai
- VI = Vietnamese (English driver)

2 Software description

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX® systems also support the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, drivers, and components, see the section that corresponds to that system.

- Windows printing-system software
- HP driver diagnostic printer check tool
- Advanced color use
- Match colors
- HP Basic Color Match tool
- HP Easy Printer Care
- HP ToolboxFX
- HP Embedded Web Server
- HP Customer Participation Program
- Optional software
- Font support

Windows printing-system software

Topics:

- Printing system and installer
- HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series print drivers

Printing system and installer

Topics:

- HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems
- Installer features

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD for MS Windows systems

The following Windows operating system versions are supported by the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer:

Express Install only

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Windows Vista Starter
- Express and Recommended Install
 - Windows XP (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (64-bit)
- Not Supported
 - Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
 - Windows Server 2000

In supported Windows operating systems, insert the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide. To open the installation CD browser, close the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide.

See the following for information about the opening screens of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Starated Guide and CD browser.

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide

Use the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide to set up the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.
The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Animated Getting Started Guide.

Figure 2-1	HP Color	LaserJet (CP2020 Series	Animated Ge	etting Start	ted Guide –	Main screen
------------	----------	------------	---------------	-------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

O HP CP 2020	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
Welcome	
10-20-47 - T	
Begin Setup	
View User Guide	
	P
Install Product Software	/
Nate: Do not connect a UCB cobio until promoted by the coffware during the installation	
Note: Do not connect a USB cable until prompted by the software during the installation.	

If the screen does not appear when you insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD browser:

- 1. Click Start.
- 2. Click Run.
- 3. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
- 4. Double-click the **AUTORUN.EXE** file to start the Animated Getting Started Guide.

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system CD browser

Use the CD browser to install the drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, and optional HP software.

The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD.

Figure 2-2 Installation software CD browser

MP - Color L	aserJet CP2020 Series 🛛 🛛
Select Install to begin instal Thank you for purchasing from HP!	lling your new HP device.
Recommended Install	Install all the software for the product, including the user guide.
<u>E</u> xpress Install	
More Information	
View User <u>G</u> uide	
HP Software <u>L</u> icense Terms	
Exit	

The main screen of the software CD browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

NOTE: The options available for each product might differ from those in the figure.

CD browser main menu	Description
Recommended Install	Install the software for the product, including the user guide. Clicking this option launches the software installer. You are prompted to choose one of the following options during the installation process.
	• Easy Install (recommended). By selecting this option, you accept the installation agreements and default settings.
	 Advanced Install. By selecting this option, you prefer to review all the installation agreements and default settings, including the opportunity to choose what software is installed.

Express Install	Install the minimum software for the product. Clicking this option opens a screen with the following options.			
	• Express USB Install. Install the minimum software for a product that uses a direct USB connection. Clicking this button indicates your acceptance of HP's Software License terms.			
	• Express Network Install. Install the minimum software for a product that is connected to a network. Clicking this button indicates your acceptance of HP's Software License terms.			
	• HP Software License Terms. View the HP Software License Terms.			
	• Back. Return to the previous screen.			
More Information	Get access to product support on the Web or to other product help and useful tips. The following are available on this screen.			
	• Read Me First. Open the latest information about the product. This selection opens the <i>HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Install Notes</i> .			
	• Optimizing Print Quality (video) Watch a short video that shows the simple steps to getting the best print quality when printing on special paper such as cardstock, heavy paper, or transparencies.			
	• Product Support Website. Go to HP's website to view troubleshooting help and frequently asked questions. Download software updates. Contact a support specialist through live chat.			
	• View User Guide. Open the product user guide on this CD. The user guide is also available in a print-friendly PDF format. To access the PDF version, either browse this CD, and open the preferred language folder, or go to the Product Support website.			
	NOTE: You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on the computer to read documents in .PDF format. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available as a free download at the following Web site:			
	www.adobe.com			
	• Animated Getting Started Guide. See videos of how to properly set up your product.			
	• Back. Return to the previous screen.			
View User Guide	Open the product user guide on this CD (CHM version).			
HP Software License Terms	View the HP Software License Terms.			
Exit	Close this application.			

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the printer. The common installer is available for Microsoft Windows operating systems as listed below:

- Express Install only
 - Windows 2000
 - Windows XP (64-bit)

- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Windows Vista Starter

• Express and Recommended Install

- Windows XP (32-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit)
- Windows Vista (64-bit)
- Not Supported
 - Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
 - Windows Server 2000

The common installer offers the following features:

- The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD features an interactive software interface.
- Network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked printer in a single process.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD also includes the following features:

- The HP LaserJet Uninstaller Utility
- Yahoo toolbar option

All of the MS Windows system components are installed by using the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system installer. The installer automatically detects the language of the operating system. See <u>Documentation availability and localization on page 5</u>.

Select from the following types of installation:

- Recommended:
 - Easy (recommended)

Choose either USB or network installation.

• Advanced Install

Choose either USB or network installation.

- Express:
 - USB
 - Network

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series print drivers

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series print drivers provide the printing features and communication between the computer and the printer. The printing system includes software for end users and network administrators who are working in the following operating environments:

The following Windows operating system versions are supported by the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer:

• Express Install only

- Windows 2000
- Windows XP (64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
- Windows Vista Starter

• Express and Recommended Install

- Windows XP (32-bit)
- Windows Vista (32-bit)
- Windows Vista (64-bit)

Not Supported

- Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
- Windows Server 2000

NOTE: For the latest information about the printing-system software components and additional information about installing the printing-system software, see the *HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printing-System Install Notes* on the printing-system software CD.

All of the drivers provide access to paper-handling and print-quality features.

Topics:

- Select the best print driver
- HP print drivers
- Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems

Select the best print driver

HP print drivers are designed for different environments and uses. See the print driver Help for available features.

Topics:

- <u>Complete LaserJet printing system (Recommended Install)</u>
- <u>HP PCL 6</u>
- HP PS Universal Print Driver

Complete LaserJet printing system (Recommended Install)

Use the printing-system software CD and choose the Recommended Install to install the HP PCL 6 driver and the full set of other software available for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. The HP PCL 6 driver is also available through the Express Install option and through the Add Printer Wizard.

HP PCL 6

Overall, the HP PCL 6 provides the best performance, print quality, and printer-feature support for most users. The driver aligns with MS Windows graphic device interface (GDI) for best performance in MS Windows environments.

The HP PCL 6 may not be fully compatible with third-party and custom solutions that are based on PCL 5.

Print Data Optimization

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is the first to offer Print Data Optimization (also known as hybrid printing). Implementation of this feature required changes to both the software (print driver) and the printer's firmware. The benefit of this feature is that files will print faster without any degradation of print quality. Print Data Optimization is a combination of the best of Page Description Language (PDL) printing with the best of host-based printing.

Print Data Optimization printing is possible only with the HP PCL 6 print driver. The Print Data Optimization feature allows the print job to use the host memory to ensure quick and high-quality printing. The print driver can be set to print like a host-based printer all the time (**Optimize for Raster**), a standard PCL printer all the time (**Optimize for Text and Vector**), or a mixture of both (**Auto**) depending upon the application you are printing from. By default, the feature is set to **Auto**. This sends data to the printer like a host-based print driver using the **Optimize for Raster** path for the list of applications below and the **Optimize for Text and Vector** path for all other applications. The feature is set in the **Advanced** tab of the Printing Preferences of the HP PCL 6 print driver.

Applications that cause use of the Raster path

- AutoCad (ACAD.EXE)
- Adobe Acrobat (ACROBAT.EXE)
- Adobe Reader (ACRORD32.EXE)
- CorelDRAW® (CORELDRW.EXE)
- Adobe Illustrator (ILLUSTRATOR.EXE)
- Adobe PhotoShop® (PHOTOSHP.exe or PHOTOSHOP.EXE)
- Microsoft PowerPoint (POWERPOINT.EXE)
- Quark Express (QUARKXPRESS.EXE)

Print Data Optimization is a feature that is only available in Windows printing. When the product is installed in the Windows environment, Print Data Optimization printing is automatically enabled. The Print Data Optimization feature is not available for Mac, Linux, or other operating systems.

The following Print Data Optimization options are available; Auto is selected by default.

- **Auto**. The default mode. In this mode, the driver behaves like a host-based printer only for the applications listed above and behaves like a standard PCL6 print driver for all other applications.
- **Optimize for Raster**. In this mode, the print driver always sends data like a host-based print driver.
- **Optimize for Text and Vector**. In this mode, the print driver always sends data like a standard PCL6 print driver.

The Print Data Optimization feature can be changed from **Auto** to **Optimize for Raster** or **Optimize for Text and Vector**.

Selecting **Optimize for Raster** causes the driver to always use the Raster path when printing; and, selecting **Optimize or Text and Vector** causes the driver to always use the PDL path.

HP PS Universal Print Driver

NOTE: The HP PS Universal Print Driver is available for download from the HP Web site: <u>www.hp.com/go/ljcp2020series_software</u>. A link to the download page is also available from the **More Software** screen on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software CD.

The Universal Print Drivers are designed for corporate or IT-managed MS Windows environments. These drivers provide a single-driver solution for use with multiple printer models.

The HP Universal Print Drivers are recommended when printing to multiple printer models or from a mobile MS Windows computer.

- Provide a single-driver solution for use with multiple printer models Designed for corporate or IT-managed Windows environments
- Preferred when printing in an enterprise or managed print server environment to multiple printer models in either a static or mobile print environment

The HP PS Universal Print Driver is recommended for printing with Adobe or other graphics-rich software programs. The driver is compatible with Adobe® PostScript® level-3 and supports postscript font DIMMs.

Use the HP PS Universal Print Driver in primarily postcript-specific software programs such as Adobe Photoshop, Adobe PageMaker, and CoreIDRAW.

HP print drivers

The HP PCL 6 driver is available on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD for Windows operating system as listed below:

- Express Install only
 - Windows 2000
 - Windows XP (64-bit)
 - Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista Starter
- Express and Recommended Install
 - Windows XP (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (32-bit)
 - Windows Vista (64-bit)
- Not Supported
 - Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
 - Windows Server 2000

The HP PS Universal Print Driver for Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit), and Microsoft Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit) is available for download from the HP Web site: www.hp.com/go/ljcp2020series_software. A link to the download page is also available from the More Software screen on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software CD.

NOTE: During a Recommended Install from the printing-system software CD, the HP PCL 6 driver is installed by default. The HP PS Universal Print Driver can be downloaded and then installed through the Add Printer Wizard.

See the following table for detailed information regarding which driver versions are available using each install method and operating system.

Table 2-1 Drivers included with the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software

Install method/Operating system	HP PCL 6	HP PS Universal Print Driver
Express Install only		
Microsoft Windows 2000	Х	
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)	Х	
Microsoft Windows XP (64-bit)	Х	
Microsoft Windows Vista (Starter)	Х	
Recommended and Express Install		
Microsoft Windows XP (32-bit)	Х	
Microsoft Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)	Х	
Add Printer Wizard Install		
Microsoft Windows 2000	Х	Х
Microsoft Windows Server 2003 (32-bit)	Х	Х
Microsoft Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit)	Х	Х
Microsoft Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit)	Х	Х
Macintosh install		
Macintosh OS	Х	

Driver version numbers for MS Windows operating systems

Access to driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is installed.

NOTE: For a list of HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series print drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/support/ljcp2020series

The Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Microsoft Windows Vista operating systems support the HP PCL 6 print driver and the HP PS Universal Print Driver. If you are

using an HP print driver in a Microsoft Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, or Microsoft Windows Vista environment, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. In Windows Vista, click Computer, click Control Panel, and then click Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

In Windows 2000, click Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click Properties.
- 4. Click the **About** tab. To determine the latest version, view the overall build number (in parentheses after the model name).

HP driver diagnostic printer check tool

Use the HP driver diagnostic printer check tool, a Web-based diagnostic software program, to determine whether the correct and most current print driver for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is in use. Two methods are available to gain access to the HP driver diagnostic printer check tool:

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

When the HP driver diagnostic printer check tool runs, the products that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. The tool gathers information about the product, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the print driver.

When the HP driver diagnostic printer check tool is open, select the HP product that you want to check. The tool verifies whether the latest driver is being used, provides feedback if an incorrect driver is being used, and indicates whether an updated driver version is available. Click the latest driver version to download and install it.

The data that the HP driver diagnostic printer check tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

Advanced color use

The product provides automatic color features that generate excellent color results. Carefully designed and tested color tables provide smooth, accurate color rendition of all printable colors.

The product also provides sophisticated tools for the experienced professional.

HP ColorSphere toner

HP designs the print system (printer, print cartridges, toner, and paper) to work together to optimize print quality, product reliability, and user productivity. Original HP print cartridges contain HP ColorSphere toner that is specifically matched to your printer so that it will produce a wide range of brilliant colors. This helps you create professional looking documents that contain sharp, clear text and graphics and realistic printed photos.

HP ColorSphere toner produces print-quality consistency and intensity you can depend on across a wide range of papers. That means you can produce documents that help you make the right impression. Plus, HP professional-quality everyday and specialty papers (including a wide variety of HP paper types and weights) are designed for the way you work.

HP ImageREt 3600

ImageREt 3600 provides 3600 dots-per-inch (dpi) color laser-class quality through a multi-level printing process. This process precisely controls color by combining up to four colors within a single dot and by varying the amount of toner in a given area. ImageREt 3600 has been improved for this product. The improvements offer trapping technologies, greater control over dot placement, and more precise control of toner quality in a dot. These new technologies, coupled with HP's multi-level printing process, result in a 600 x 600 dpi printer that provides 3600-dpi color laser-class quality with millions of smooth colors.

In contrast, the single-level printing process found in the default mode of other color laser printers does not allow the colors to be mixed within a single dot. This process, called dithering, significantly hinders the ability to create a wide range of colors without reduced sharpness or visible dot structure.

Media selection

For the best color and image quality, select the appropriate paper type from the **Paper/Quality** tab in the Printing Preferences of the print driver.

Color options

Color options automatically provide optimal color output. These options use object tagging, which provides optimal color and halftone settings for different objects (text, graphics, and photos) on a page. The print driver determines which objects appear on a page and uses halftone and color settings that provide the best print quality for each object.

In the Windows environment, the **Automatic** and **Manual** color options are on the **Color** tab in the print driver.

Standard red-green-blue (sRGB)

Standard red-green-blue (sRGB) is a worldwide color standard that HP and Microsoft developed as a common color language for monitors, input products (scanners and digital cameras), and output products (printers and plotters). It is the default color space used for HP products, Microsoft operating systems, the World Wide Web, and most office software. The sRGB standard represents the typical Windows monitor and is the convergence standard for high-definition television.

NOTE: Factors such as the type of monitor you use and the room lighting can affect the appearance of colors on your screen. For more information, see <u>Match colors on page 29</u>.

The latest versions of Adobe PhotoShop, CoreIDRAW, Microsoft Office, and many other programs use sRGB to communicate color. Because it is the default color space in Microsoft operating systems, sRGB has been adopted broadly. When programs and products use sRGB to exchange color information, typical users experience greatly improved color matching.

The sRGB standard improves your ability to match colors between the product, the computer monitor, and other input products automatically, and eliminates the need to become a color expert.

Use color themes to adjust the **RGB Color** options for the entire page.

Setting description	Setting options
RGB Color	 Default (sRGB) instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB. The sRGB standard is the accepted standard of Microso and the World Wide Web Consortium (<u>http://www.w3.org</u>).
	 Vivid instructs the product to increase the color saturation in th midtones. Less colorful objects are rendered more colorfully. Th setting is recommended for printing business graphics.
	 Photo interprets RGB color as if it were printed as a photograp using a digital mini-lab. It renders deeper, more saturated color differently than Default (sRGB) mode. Use this setting for printin photos.
	 Photo (AdobeRGB 1998) is for digital photos that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. When printing from professional software program that uses AdobeRGB, it is important to turn off the color management in the software progra and allow the product to manage the color space.
	 None sets the printer to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render photographs correctly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or the operating system.

Match colors

The process of matching printer output color to your computer screen is complex, because printers and computer monitors use different methods of producing color. Monitors *display* colors by using light pixels that use an RGB (red, green, blue) color process, but printers *print* colors by using a CMYK (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) process.

Several factors can influence your ability to match printed colors to those on your monitor:

- Paper
- Printer colorants (inks or toners, for example)
- Printing process (inkjet, press, or laser technology, for example)
- Overhead lighting
- Personal differences in perception of color
- Software programs
- Printer drivers
- Computer operating systems
- Monitors
- Video cards and drivers
- Operating environment (humidity, for example)

Keep these factors in mind when colors on your screen do not perfectly match your printed colors.

For most users, the best method for matching colors is to print sRGB colors.

Use HP ToolboxFX to print the Microsoft Office Basic Colors palette

You can use HP ToolboxFX to print a palette of the Microsoft Office Basic Colors. Use this palette to select the colors that you want to use in printed documents. It shows the actual colors that print when you select these basic colors in a Microsoft Office program.

- 1. In HP ToolboxFX, click the **Help** folder.
- 2. Click Color Printing Tools, and then click Print Basic Colors.

HP Basic Color Match tool

The HP Basic Color Match tool allows you to adjust spot color in your printed output. For example, you can match the color of your company logo on your printed output. You can save and use the new color themes for specific documents or all printed documents, or you can create multiple color themes that you can choose from later.

The HP Basic Color Match tool can be downloaded from one of the following:

- HP Web site: <u>www.hp.com</u>
- HP ToolboxFX
- Install more software option on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD

Use HP ToolboxFX to download the HP Basic Color Match tool

- 1. In HP ToolboxFX, select the Help folder.
- 2. In the **Color Printing Tools** section, select **Basic Color Match**. This opens an HP.com Web page from which you can download the Basic Color Match tool.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care is a standalone software program that manages from 1 to 15 printers. It enables you to view the status of all HP printers, set up printer and status alerts, generate printer usage reports, and reorder supplies.

NOTE: The HP Easy Printer Care Software will be available for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer in early 2009 at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Or, on the printing-system CD, click **Install More Software**, and then click **HP Easy Printer Care** to be redirected to the HP Web site.

HP ToolboxFX

This section provides information about the following topics:

- HP ToolboxFX overview
- System requirements
- Key features
- HP ToolboxFX folders
- Other screens

HP ToolboxFX overview

NOTE: HP ToolboxFX is available for Microsoft Windows XP and Windows Vista operating systems only. HP ToolboxFX is only available with a recommended install. It is not installed during an Express Install.

HP ToolboxFX allows end users to easily communicate with and manage the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. HP ToolboxFX provides the following capabilities:

- A view of the current status of the product
- A view of the current status of the product consumables
- Alert functionality, notifying the end user when particular events or conditions occur at the product
- Access to troubleshooting information
- Access to some of the product settings, as an alternative to gaining access through the product control panel

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) and HP ToolboxFX

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). The HP EWS handles HP ToolboxFX requests and HTTP requests from a Web browser. Use the HP EWS to set objects in the product, such as default configuration settings, and to simulate button presses.

The HP EWS provides the following functionality:

- The HP EWS is can be opened by typing the printer IP address into the address bar of a browser when the printer is connected to the network.
- HP ToolboxFX performs functions that are similar to the HP EWS. HP EWS is only available for printers with a network connection. HP TooolboxFX is available for all HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printers that have had a full installation regardless of whether the installation was performed with a network or USB connection.

For more information about the HP EWS, see <u>HP Embedded Web Server on page 86</u>.

Start HP ToolboxFX

Start the HP ToolboxFX by using any of the following methods:

- Double-click the HP ToolboxFX icon in the Microsoft Windows system tray.
- Click Start, click All Programs, click HP, click HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series, and then click HP ToolboxFX.
- Right-click the HP ToolboxFX icon in the Microsoft Windows system tray. Then click Open HP ToolboxFX.

Structure

HP ToolboxFX consists of a single framework divided into several sections.

- Heading banner. Each screen that is displayed in HP ToolboxFX has a heading banner at the top that includes the HP logo.
- Devices pane. The Devices pane is always visible on the left-hand side of the HP ToolboxFX window. The Devices pane shows the HP products that are available to the host computer system and folders for the types of information available about each product.
- **Main content area.** Click any of the products or folders listed in the Devices pane to see information about that product in the main content area of the HP ToolboxFX window.
- **Toolbar.** A toolbar appears at the top of the main content area. The toolbar contains buttons for printing, refreshing the screen, ordering supplies, and getting help.
- **Other Links pane.** The Other Links pane is always visible in the lower-left corner of the HP ToolboxFX window. The Other Links pane contains links to the HP Instant Support, Product Support, and Product Registration pages on the HP Web site.

Opening screen

The opening screen that appears in the HP ToolboxFX section depends on the installed configuration of HP ToolboxFX. If HP ToolboxFX is installed for a single HP LaserJet product, the **Device Status** screen for that HP LaserJet product appears when the toolbox is opened. Double-click any of the products listed to go to the **Device Status** screen for that product. If multiple products supported by HP ToolboxFX are installed, they will appear in the **Devices** pane.

System requirements

HP ToolboxFX is currently supported on the following operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows Vista
- Microsoft Windows XP

HP ToolboxFX also requires the installation of Microsoft .NET Framework 2.0 on the client machine, which happens automatically during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software (if necessary).

Key features

The following alert messages are available:

HP product pop-up alert messages

• System-tray icon alert

• E-mail alert

Through HP ToolboxFX, the appropriate person can be alerted when the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer needs attention. To see a list of the events that generate alerts in HP ToolboxFX, see <u>Set up Status Alerts on page 44</u>.

For status alerts, a group of errors or a group of print-cartridge warnings can be selected, but not specific items within those groups. To configure alerts, use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen in the **Alerts** folder in HP ToolboxFX.

HP product pop-up alert messages

Pop-up alert messages give instant notification when an error or print-cartridge warning occurs in the product. An error, such as a "jam," halts product operation and requires correction before the product continues operation. The alert condition can be corrected at any time. Alerts are sent only to the specific computer that prints to the product. This feature is provided through HP ToolboxFX and is turned *on* by default.

IP ToolboxFX Al	ert	
	HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Se	ries PCL 6
	LOAD PAPER	P Help
	All trays are empty.	
		Alerts Settings
		<u>о</u> к

Figure 2-3 HP product alert – Load Paper pop-up message

System-tray icon alert

The system-tray icon feature shows information about all of the current alert conditions for the product. An **HP Device Alert** icon appears in the Microsoft Windows system tray when an alert condition occurs. This feature is turned *on* by default.

E-mail alert

E-mail alert messages notify up to two users when a specific alert condition occurs in the product. The alert condition can be a specific error alert or print-cartridge warning. This feature can be used to alert

This feature is turned *off* by default. To activate this feature, type the appropriate e-mail address, select the notification events, configure the SMTP e-mail server, and enable the feature in HP ToolboxFX.

HP ToolboxFX folders

The HP ToolboxFX folders section describes the following:

- <u>Status folder</u>
- <u>Alerts folder</u>
- Product Information folder
- <u>Help folder</u>
- Device Settings folder
- <u>Network Settings folder</u>

Status folder

The Status folder contains the following screens:

- Device Status
- Supplies Status
- <u>Device Configuration</u>
- Network Summary
- Print Info Pages
- Color Usage Job Log
- Event Log

Device Status

The **Device Status** screen shows product status messages from the product. The **Device Status** screen also contains some pertinent printer information and product settings.

HP Toolbox					
vices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP2025	ln			
Known Printers	E 8			Shop for Su	pplies
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie Status Device Status	Device Status				
Supplies Status Device Configuration Device Configuration Network Summary Print Info Pages Color Usage Job Log	HP Color Las Status: Powers	erJet CP2025dn save on			
 Event Log Alerts Product Information 	Supplies Status				
æ 🗃 Help ⊛ 🗃 Device Settings æ 🚰 Network Settings	100% 75% 50% 25%				
	Supplies Information	-			
	Supply Name	Estimated Status*	Pages Remaining ^{≠+}	HP Part Number	
	Black Cartridge	94%	not available	CC530A	
	Cyan Cartridge	72%	398	CC531A	
		74%	442	CC533A	
er Links	Yellow Cartridge	65%	293	CC532A	
		"Estimate only. Actual supplies level ma Pages remaining will vary depending or			
HP Instant Support					
Support and Troubleshooting					
	11				
Online HP Offers					

Figure 2-4 HP ToolboxFX Device Status screen

NOTE: The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printers include a Supplies Status section and a Supplies Information section on the **Device Status** screen. These sections provide information about the estimated toner level, the approximate pages remaining based on the estimated toner level, and the HP part number for easy reference when ordering new consumables.

Supplies Status

The **Supplies Status** screen provides detailed information about the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print cartridges. This information is not available if a non-HP cartridge is installed in the product.

Figure 2-5	HP ToolboxFX Supplies Status screen
------------	-------------------------------------



Device Configuration

The **Device Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the settings available for the product and other configuration items, such as installed DIMMs, personalities, and page counts. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page that the firmware generates.

	DOXEX Device Configura		
	=x		
Devices	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	Shop for Sup	vilies 2
E Chown Printers Figure 1	Device Configuration	Տուսի 101 3պր	
🖃 🛅 Status 🔛 Device Status			
 Supplies Status Device Configuration Network Summary Print Info Pages Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Poduct Information Poduct Information Poduct Settings Network Settings 	Product Information Product name: Formatter number: Product serial number: Service ID: Firmware datecode: Maximum monochrome print quality: Maximum molor print quality: Controller number: Device description: Device language: Asset number: Contact person: Password: Hardware address: Host name: IPv4 address:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn MB0012H X000000000 17240 20080220 600 x 8 ImageREt 3600 8 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn English Not specified 00 1a.4b.27.2c.c4 10.10.48.85	
	Show IPv4 address on control panel: IPv6 address: Total memory: Available memory:	Disabled FE80::21A:4BFF:FE27:2CC4 128 MB 109.35 MB	
	Installed Personalities and Options PCL5		
	PCL5 PostScript PCLXL		
	DIMM Slot 1:	Empty	
	Page Counts Total pages printed: Color pages printed: Total monochrome pages printed: Duplexer page counts: Pages mispicked in printer: Pages jammed in printer: PCLB pages printed: PSC pages pages printed: PSC pages	1046 930 116 12 9 0 25 0 0	
	Paper Settings		
	Paper size: Paper type: Tray 1 size: Tray 1 size: Tray 2 type: Paper out action: Manual feed: Duplex: Bind: Plain: HP Calor Laser.let Matte 105g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 105g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 105g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 120g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 120g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 120g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 105g: HP Color Laser.let Matte 105g: HP Color Laser.let Colors (100g): HP Color Laser.let Prochure Matte 180g: HP Color Laser.let Prochure Glossy 180g: HP Color Laser.let Prochure Glossy 160g: HP Trifuld Color Laser.let Prochure Glossy 160g: HP Trifuld Color Laser.let Prochure Glossy 160g: HP Trifuld Color Laser.let Prochure Glossy 176; Card Glossy 111-130g: Extra Heavy Glossy 111-175g: Card Glossy 176-220g: Transparency: Labels: Letterhead: Envelope: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Rough: HP Cough paper:	Letter Plain Any Any Any Any Wait forever Off Off Off Cardstock Mode Heavy Mode Heavy Mode Extra Heavy Mode Cardstock Mode Cardstock Mode Cardstock Mode Cardstock Mode Glossy Mode Glossy Mode Glossy Mode Heavy Glossy Mode Extra Heavy Mode Heavy Glossy Mode Heavy Glossy Mode Heavy Envelope Normal Mode Heavy Envelope Normal Mode Normal Mode Normal Mode Heavy Mode Cardstock Mode Havy Mode Cardstock Mode HP Tough Paper Mode	

Figure 2-6 HP ToolboxFX Device Configuration screen (1 of 2)

	Print Settings		
	Auto continue:	Off	
	Copies:	1	
	Courier:	Regular	
	Orientation:	Portrait	
	Wide A4:	No	
	Connection time-out (I/O):	120 seconds	
	Jam recovery:	Auto	
	Font source:	Internal	
	Font number: Pitch:	23 10.00	
	Pitch: Point size:	12.00	
	Symbol set:	PC-8	
	Form:	60 Lines	
ner Links	Append CR to LF:	No	
1er Links	Print PS Errors:	Off	
	Supply out override enabled:	No	
HP Instant Support	Mono print (color out):	No	
	Restrict color:	Color enabled	
Support and Troubleshooting			
Online HP Offers			
Product Registration			

Figure 2-7 HP ToolboxFX Device Configuration screen (2 of 2)

Network Summary

The **Network Summary** screen shows the values for all of the network settings that are available for the product. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page that the firmware generates.



Figure 2-8 HP ToolboxFX Network Summary screen – Status folder

Print Info Pages

Use the **Print Info Pages** screen to print the internal special pages that the product generates. The content of these reports is generated by the product firmware, *not* by the HP ToolboxFX. Click **Print** next to the name of the page to be printed.



Figure 2-9 HP ToolboxFX Print Info Pages screen

Color Usage Job Log

Use the Color Usage Job Log screen to complete the following tasks:

- Find the printer serial number under the **Product Information** subheading.
- Check the number of print jobs stored under the **Usage Totals** subheading. The log also includes information about how much color the printer has used.
- Delete the currently stored Color Usage Job Log information by selecting the **Clear Job Log** option.

Figure 2-10 HP ToolboxFX Color Usage Job Log screen

MP ToolboxFX								
HP Toolbox	FX						And the second s	ſ
Devices	📳 HP Color LaserJet	: CP2025dn						
🗉 🚞 Known Printers	E Ø					Shop for S <u>u</u> ppli	es	?
 ■ ➡ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie ■ ➡ Status ■ Device Status 	Color Usage	Job Log						
E Supplies Status Device Configuration Network Summary	Product Information Product name: Product serial number:	HP Color LaserJet	CP2025dn					
Print Info Pages Color Usage Job Log Color Usage Job Log Alerts Alerts Color Job Product Information	Usage Totals Total Jobs in log: Total mono sides: Total color sides: Total sheets:	2 1 1 2						
æ 🗃 Help æ 🚔 Device Settings æ 🚞 Network Settings	Job Log <u>C</u> lear Job Log	To delete the stored on the	: Color Usage Job Lo : device, press the Cl	ig information cu ear Job Log but	irrently ton.			
		User Job	Application	Mono Sides	Color Sides	Total Sheet		
	3/20/2008 7:48:26 PM	shelleyr hpbtpg.tpg	HP Driver test page Internal Report	0	1	1		
			Internal Report	1	U	1		
Other Links								I
Online HP Offers								
Product Registration								

Event Log

Use the **Event Log** screen to monitor events for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. Up to 10 events can appear on this screen. If this screen is empty, no events have occurred on the printer.

Figure 2-11 HP ToolboxFX Event Log screen

Devices	📄 HP Co	lor Laser	let CP2025dn	l i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		
Known Printers Find The Color LaserJet CP2020 Ser	ie 🗵 🖉				Shop for Supplies	?
🖃 🚞 Status	Event	Log				
Device Status Supplies Status	Number	Code	Page count	Description		
Device Configuration	10	13.0000	936	Paper Jam		
	9	13.0000	895	Paper Jam		
Network Summary	8	55.3000	878	Engine or formatter communication error		
🖹 Print Info Pages	7	20.0000	821	Insufficient Print Memory		
🖹 Color Usage Job Log	6	13.0000	450	Paper Jam		
Event Log	5	13.0000	448	Paper Jam		
🗉 🚞 Alerts	4	13.0000	447	Paper Jam		
🗉 🚞 Product Information	3	13.0000	444	Paper Jam		
🗉 🚞 Help	2	13.0000	441	Paper Jam		
🖬 🚞 Device Settings	1	13.0000	435	Paper Jam		
Network Settings						
	<u>e</u> l .					
	-					
<] (
	•					
Dther Links						
Other Links						
Dther Links						

Alerts folder

The **Alerts** folder contains the following screens:

- Set up Status Alerts
- Set up E-mail Alerts

Figure 2-12 HP ToolboxFX Alerts folder



Set up Status Alerts

Use the **Set up Status Alerts** screen to set up status alerts for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. Select the **Turn on alerts** option and then click **Apply** to turn on alerts.

Figure 2-13	ΗP	ToolboxFX	Set up	p Status	Alerts	screen
-------------	----	-----------	--------	----------	--------	--------

HP ToolboxFX		
	=x	
Devices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
 ■ Known Printers ■ ➡ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie ■ ➡ Status 	E Ø Set up Status Alerts	Shop for Supplies ?
Alerts Set up Status Alerts	Alerts are sent only when the device is printing from this computer.	
 Bet up E-mail Alerts ■ Product Information ■ Help ■ Device Settings 	Alerts Switch:	
📾 🚞 Network Settings	Show an alert: When the device cannot print (for example, the device is out of paper) When the HP print cartridge is low or a non-HP cartridge is installed	
<	 Show the alert: ✓ As a pop-up message ✓ As a system tray icon 	
Other Links		
 HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers 		
Product Registration		Дрріу а

Select options under Show an alert to receive alerts like those in the following table.

Pop-up alerts	Event				
Printer Alerts	Load Paper Tray 1 [TRAY] [SIZE]				
	Load Paper Tray 2 [TRAY] [SIZE]				
	Tray 1 Paper Out				
	• Tray 2 Paper Out				
	• Tray 3 Paper Out				
	Paper Mispick				
	Insufficient Memory				
	Door Cover Open				
	Manual Feed				
	• Tray 1 Jam				
	• Tray 2 Jam				
	• Tray 3 Jam				
	Jam In Paper Path				
	Jam In Cartridge Area				
	Jam In Output Bin				
	Invalid Driver				
	Output Bin Full				
	Tray 1 Unexpected Size [SIZE]				
	Tray 2 Unexpected Size [SIZE]				
	Tray 3 Unexpected Size [SIZE]				
	Misprint				
	Top Detect Error				
	• 507Error				
	• 508Error				
	• 509Error				
	• 5120Error				
	• 5121Error				
	• 5122Error				
	• 5123Error				
	Yellow Toner Level Sensor Error				
	Magenta Toner Level Sensor Error				
	Cyan Toner Level Sensor Error				

Table 2-2 Supported pop-up alerts for HP ToolboxFX

Pop-up alerts	Event			
	Black Toner Level Sensor Error			
	Top Sensor Error			
	• 541 Error			
	• 550 Error			
	DCC NVRAM Data Error			
	DCC NVRAM Access Error			
	DCC Error			
	• 5601Error			
	• 5701Error			
	• 5706Error			
	• 593Error			
	• 594Error			
	• 5950Error			
	• 5953Error			
	• 5960Error			
	• 5963Error			
	• 5973Error			
	• 5983Error			
	• 599Error			
	T2ClutchError			
	• 59A0Error			
	• 59C0Error			
	• 59F0Error			
Supplies Warning Alerts	Order Black Cartridge			
	Order Yellow Cartridge			
	Order Magenta Cartridge			
	Order Cyan Cartridge			
	Order Supplies			
	Replace Cyan Printing In Black			
	Replace Magenta Printing In Black			
	Replace Yellow Printing In Black			
	Printing In Black Replace Supply			
	Replace Supplies Override In Use			

Pop-up alerts	Event
	Replace Black Override In Use
	Replace Cyan Override In Use
	Replace Magenta Override In Use
	Replace Yellow Override In Use
Supplies Error Alerts	BlackElabelError
	BlackElabelMissing
	BlackIncorrect
	NonHPBlackCartridge
	ReplaceBlack
	UnsupportedBlackCartridge
	UsedBlackCartridge
	UsedBlackInstalled
	UnsupportedInstalledBlackCartridge
	RemoveBlackLock
	IncompatibleBlackCartridgeError
	CyanElabelError
	CyanElabelMissing
	CyanIncorrect
	ReplaceCyan
	UnsupportedCyanCartridge
	UsedCyanCartridge
	UsedCyanInstalled
	UnsupportedInstalledCyanCartridge
	RemoveCyanLock
	IncompatibleCyanCartridgeErrror
	MagentaElabelError
	MagentaElabelMissing
	MagentaIncorrect
	NonHPMagentaCartridge
	ReplaceMagenta
	UnsupportedMagentaCartridge
	UsedMagentaCartridge
	UsedMagentaInstalled

Table 2-2 Supported pop-up alerts for HP ToolboxFX (continued)

Pop-up alerts	Event					
	UnsupportedInstalledMagentaCartridge					
	RemoveMagentaLock					
	IncompatibleMagentaCartridgeError					
	YellowElabelError					
	YellowElabelMissing					
	YellowIncorrect					
	NonHPYellowCartridge					
	ReplaceYellow					
	UnsupportedYellowCartridge					
	UsedYellowCartridge					
	UsedYellowInstalled					
	UnsupportedInstalledYellowCartridge					
	RemoveYellowLock					
	IncompatibleYellowCartridgeError					

Table 2-2 Supported pop-up alerts for HP ToolboxFX (continued)

Select one or more formats for the alert under Show the alert:

- A pop-up message
- A system tray icon
- **NOTE:** Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

Set up E-mail Alerts

Use the **Set up E-mail Alerts** screen to set up e-mail alerts for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

The default settings for the Set up E-mail Alerts screen are as follows:

- E-mail alerts are turned off by default.
- The SMTP server box and the address boxes are disabled.
- Supplies alert events are selected for both e-mail addresses.

Figure 2-14 HP ToolboxFX Set up E-mail Alerts screen

HP ToolboxFX								
HP Toolbox	FX							
Devices	📄 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn							
🗉 🛅 Known Printers	E 🛛			Shop for S <u>u</u> pplies	?			
■ ➡ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie ■ ➡ Status ■ ➡ Alerts	Set up E-mail Alerts							
 Set up Status Alerts Set up E-mail Alerts Product Information Help 	To receive e-mail alerts you must enable e-mail alerts and then fill in the necessary information below. You must also select at least one event for each entered e-mail address. Finally, click on the Apply button at the bottom of the page to save your settings.							
■ ■ Device Settings ■ ■ Network Settings	⊙ Turn off e-mail alerts							
*	○ Turn on e-mail alerts							
	Configure E-mail Server and Addresses							
	Enter the information for the e-mail server that will be sending out the e-mail alert message forr this device. These values only need to be set if you are using e-mail alerts.							
	SMTP server (Example: mailserver.company.com)							
	Contact your e-mail administrator if you do not know what e-mail server settings to enter.							
	Enter e-mail addresses below that are to receive e-mail notification when certain events occur at your device.							
	Address 1							
	Address 2							
	Select Alert Events							
	Select which events to receive e-mail notification for.							
	Events	Address 1	Address 2					
	Paper out							
	Cartridge low							
	Non-HP print cartridge installed							
	Replace cartridge							
	Close door/covers							
	Remove paper jam							
	Printer mispick							
	Manual feed							
	Insufficient memory							
	Unexpected paper size							
	Test E-mail Alert Settings							
<u> ()</u>	After you have saved your e-mail alerts sett After clicking the button, each e-mail addres message with the subject line: "Test E-mai within a few minutes, then your e-mail settir	ss you have saved should il Message". If this messag	receive a test e-mail ge is not received					
Other Links								
🔲 HP Instant Support	Test E-r	mail Settings						
Support and Troubleshooting								
Online HP Offers								
Product Registration				Appl	y			

E-mail messages can be sent about the supplies status or events (such as a jam) related to the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. Select the specific events about which you want notification.

The following E-mail Alerts are available:

- Cartridge Low
- Replace Cartridge
- Close doors/covers
- Insufficient memory
- Manual feed
- Non-HP print cartridge installed
- Unauthorized supply installed
- Paper out
- Printer mispick
- Remove paper jam
- Unexpected paper size

Use the following procedure to activate this feature:

- 1. Click to select the **Turn on e-mail alerts** option.
- 2. Configure the SMTP e-mail server that will be used to send the e-mail message.
- Type in a valid e-mail address. Up to two e-mail addresses can be configured to receive messages for each event.
- 4. Select the events for which you want notification.
- 5. Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

To ensure that the correct e-mail addresses have been used and that the SMTP server information is valid, click the **Test E-mail Settings** button.

Product Information folder

The Product Information folder contains the following screen:

Demonstration Pages

Demonstration Pages

Use the **Demonstration Pages** screen to print a Print Quality Demonstration page or a Product Demonstration page. Click the **Print** button next to the page you want to print.

Figure 2-15 HP ToolboxFX Demonstration Pages screen



Help folder

The Help folder contains the following screens:

- <u>Troubleshooting</u>
- Paper and Print Media
- Color Printing Tools
- Animated Demonstrations
- User Guide

Troubleshooting

The following sections appear on the Troubleshooting screen:

- **Troubleshoot a problem**. Click **Troubleshooting** to open the Troubleshooting chapter of the *HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer User Guide*.
- **Print Quality Troubleshooting**. The following options are available:
 - **Print**. Click this button to print the Print Quality Troubleshooting pages. Use these pages to troubleshoot page defects.
 - **Print Basic Colors**. Click this button to print a single page of basic color palette options. Use this option to match a specific color.
 - **View Custom Colors**. Click this button to explore the basic and custom printer color palette options. The color samples .PDF file opens in Adobe Acrobat Reader.
 - NOTE: You must have Adobe Acrobat Reader installed on the computer to read documents in .PDF format. Adobe Acrobat Reader is available as a free download at the following Web site:

www.adobe.com
- **Cleaning Page**. Follow the onscreen directions to clean the printer paper path.
- Calibration. Click Calibrate Now to calibrate the printer.

🏟 HP ToolboxFX	
	FX THE T
Devices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
🗉 🛅 Known Printers	E 😵 Shop for Supplies 2
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie Status	Troubleshooting
Alerts	Troubleshoot a problem
Final Product Information Final Help	
 Troubleshooting Paper and Print Media Color Printing Tools 	Click the "Troubleshooting" button below for assistance when you are experiencing problems.
Animated Demonstrations	Iroubleshooting
	Print Quality Troubleshooting
The two A settings	Click the button below to print out the print quality troubleshooting pages.
	Print
	Click the buttons below to print a single page Microsoft Office Basic Color palette or to launch the full palette of color with associated RGB color values.
	Print <u>B</u> asic Colors View Custom Colors
	Cleaning Page
	Click the "Clean" button below to clean your product's paper path.
	<u>C</u> lean
()	
Other Links	Calibration
	Click the "Calibrate now" button below to calibrate the color printing of your device.
HP Instant Support	
 Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers 	Calibrate <u>N</u> ow
Unline HP Offers Product Registration	_

Figure 2-16 HP ToolboxFX Troubleshooting screen

Paper and Print Media

From this screen you can open the Paper and Print Media Guide in .PDF format.

Figure 2-17 HP ToolboxFX Paper and Print Media screen



Color Printing Tools

Use the Color Printing Tools to solve certain color printing problems.

The following options are available on the Color Printing Tools screen:

- Print Basic Colors
- View Custom Colors
- Basic Color Match

NOTE: Clicking **Basic Color Match** opens the HP Color Match Software if the software is installed. If the software is not installed, the HP Color Match Software Web site opens where you can download the software.

Figure 2-18 HP ToolboxFX Color Printing Tools screen



Animated Demonstrations

The following demonstrations are available on the Animated Demonstrations screen:

- Get the best print quality
- Paper jam removal
- Replacing a print cartridge

Figure 2-19 HP ToolboxFX Animated Demonstrations screen



The following options are available on the User Guide screen:

- Interactive User Guide. Click this to open the user guide in a .CHM version. This view is similar to a Web-page format.
- **Printer-Friendly User Guide.** Click this button to open a .PDF version of the user guide. Opening the document in this view might require downloading the Adobe Acrobat reader. For more information, see the following Web site: <u>www.adobe.com</u>



Figure 2-20 HP ToolboxFX User Guide screen

Device Settings folder

The **Device Settings** folder contains the following screens:

- Device Information
- Paper Handling
- Printing
- <u>PCL5</u>
- <u>PostScript</u>
- Print Quality
- Print Density
- Paper Types
- <u>Extended Print Modes screen</u>
- System Setup

- Save/Restore Settings
- Password

Device Information

The Device Information screen contains identifying information about the printer:

- Device Description. This field shows the version of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer • that is installed.
- Asset Number. Use this field to assign an identifying asset control number to the printer. •
- Company Name.
- Contact Person. •

Figure 2-21 HP ToolboxFX Device Information screen

	FX	
HP LOOIDOX	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Device Information Device description: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Asset number: Company name: Contact person:	Shep for Supplies 2
Product Registration		Арріу

NOTE: Click **Apply** to make any changes take effect.

Paper Handling

Use this screen to configure the paper-handling defaults for the printer. Change the default settings by clicking the blue arrow next to each option and highlighting the selection. Click **Apply** to save the new settings.

📤 HP ToolboxFX			
HP Toolbox	FX		
Devices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP2025	dn	
🗉 🚞 Known Printers	E 🛛		Shop for Supplies ?
■ ➡ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie ■ ➡ Status	Paper Handling		
🗉 🚞 Alerts	Paper Handling:		
E Product Information E Help	Default paper size:	Letter	
□ ■ Device Settings ■ Device Information	Default paper type:	Plain	
Paper Handling	Manual feed:	Off 🖌	
PCL5	Print on both sides (duplex):	Off 🖌	
PostScript	Bind:	Long Edge	
Print Density	Tray 1 size:	Any 🖌	
Paper Types	Tray 1 type:	Any	
System Setup Save / Restore Settings	Tray 2 size:	Any	
E Password	Tray 2 type:	Any 👻	
🖩 🚞 Network Settings	Paper Out Handling		
	• Wait for paper to be loaded		
	Specify time and action		
Other Links	Paper out time:	0 seconds (0 - 3600)	
	Paper out action:	Cancel 🗸	
🔲 HP Instant Support			
Support and Troubleshooting			
Online HP Offers			
Product Registration			Apply

Figure 2-22 HP ToolboxFX Paper Handling screen

The following options are available.

• **Default paper size**. This drop-down menu lists all of the supported paper sizes.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, use the driver to set paper size only when printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

NOTE: Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the printer, a control-panel message prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

• **Default paper type**. This drop-down menu shows a selection of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the printer uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**. For more information about paper types, see <u>Paper type: on page 192</u>.

- **Duplex**. The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:
 - HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
 - HP Color LaserJet CP2025x

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to Unspecified, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

For more information about the duplex feature, see Finishing tab features on page 206.

• **Bind**. Binding occurs along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

For more information about binding, see Finishing tab features on page 206.

• **Tray size and type**. Network administrators can use this feature to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tab set. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the printer with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed on this screen include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the Paper/Quality tab.

Printing

Use the **Printing** screen to change the printing defaults for the printer.

Figure 2-23 HP ToolboxFX Printing screen

HP ToolboxFX		💶 🗖 🔁
HP Toolbox	FX	
Devices	📄 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
■ Mown Printers ■ ■ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Se		Shop for Supplies ?
	Printing	
	Copies: 1 (1 - 999) Wide A4: No v Courier font: Regular v Orientation: Portrait v	
Other Links HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers Product Registration 		≜ppiv

The following options are available.

• **Copies**. This setting specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The requested number of copies appears in the **Copies** option. Select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows on the right side of the text box. For the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used.

Invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than 9999) change to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Problems can develop when a software program and the driver it is running on both allow the user to set the number of copies to print. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) appears in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver might result in the printer making 100 copies (10 x 10). Set the number of copies in the software program, whenever possible.

- Orientation. Use this feature to choose the direction of the print job.
 - **Portrait**. The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper. This is the default setting.
 - **Landscape**. The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

PCL5

Use the **PCL5** screen to change font information and form length.

Figure 2-24 HP ToolboxFX PCL5 screen

HP ToolboxFX		
	FX	
Devices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
Devices	Image: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Image: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Image: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn PCL5 Font number: 23 (0 - 84) Font pitch: 10.00 (0.44 - 99.99) Font point size: 12.00 (4.00 - 999.75) Symbol set: PC-8< Image: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Append CR to LF: No Image: HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn Form length: 60 (5 - 128)	Shop for Supplies 2
 HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers Product Registration 		Apply

NOTE: Click **Apply** to make any changes take effect.

PostScript

Use the PostScript screen to turn postscript error printing on or off.

Figure 2-25 HP ToolboxFX PostScript screen

evices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
🖬 🔚 Known Printers 💆		Shop for Supplies
Filler Color LaserJet CP2020 Se Se Status Alerts	PostScript	
Product Information	Print PostScript errors: Off	
⊞ 🚍 Help ⊒ 🚞 Device Settings		
🖹 Device Information		
Paper Handling Printing		
PCL5		
PostScript		
Print Quality		
Paper Types		
🖹 Extended Print Modes 🔜		
📄 System Setup 📄 Save / Restore Settings 🥥		
Save / Restore Settings		
ther Links		
HP Instant Support		
Support and Troubleshooting		
Online HP Offers		
Product Registration		Apply

NOTE: Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

The **Print PostScript errors** setting specifies whether a PS error-handler message is sent. To get the printer to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **On**.

Print Quality

Use the **Print Quality** screen to change when and how often the printer calibrates. You can also use the **Calibrate Now** button on this screen to cause the printer to calibrate.

Figure 2-26 HP ToolboxFX Print Quality screen



NOTE: Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

Print Density

Use the settings on the **Print Density** screen to adjust the amount of toner the printer uses for images, pages, and documents.

Figure 2-27	HP ToolboxFX Print Density screer	۱
-------------	-----------------------------------	---

HP Toolbo	FX	
lices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
Known Printers	E Ø	Shop for Supplies
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie E Status	Print Density	
🗉 🔚 Alerts	Contrasts	
■ Product Information ■ Product Information		
Device Settings Device Information	Cyan density 0	
Paper Handling		
Printing	Yellow density 0 🗸 Black density 0 🗸	
PostScript		
🖹 Print Quality 📄 Print Density	Highlights	
🗈 Paper Types	Cyan density 🛛 🗸	
🖹 Extended Print Modes 🖹 System Setup	Magenta density 0 🗸	
🖹 Save / Restore Settings	Yellow density 🛛 🗸	
🖹 Password 😠 🚞 Network Settings	Black density 0 🗸	
_	Midtones	
	Cyan density 0 🗸	
	Magenta density 🛛 🗸	
	Yellow density	
	Black density 0 🗸	
	Shadows	
	Cyan density 🛛 🗸	
	Magenta density	
	Yellow density	
	Black density	
<u> </u>	Restore defaults	
er Links		
HP Instant Support	🗌 Restore defaults	
Support and Troubleshooting		
Online HP Offers		
Product Registration		Apply

The **Print Density** screen contains the following settings:

- **Contrasts.** Contrast is the density difference between light (highlight) and dark (shadow) colors. To increase the difference between light and dark colors (equivalent to a negative highlight adjustment and a positive shadow adjustment), use a positive contrast setting. To decrease the difference between light and dark colors (equivalent to a positive highlight adjustment and a negative shadow adjustment), use a negative contrast setting.
- **Highlights.** Highlight colors are colors near white. To make highlight colors darker, use a positive highlight setting. To make highlight colors lighter, use a negative highlight setting. This adjustment does not affect midtone or shadow colors.
- **Midtones.** Midtone colors are about halfway between white and solid density. To make midtone colors darker, use a positive midtone setting, and to make midtone colors lighter, use a negative highlight setting. This adjustment does not affect highlight or shadow colors.

- Shadows. Shadow colors are colors near solid density. To make shadow colors darker, use a
 positive shadow setting. To make shadow colors lighter, use a negative shadow setting. This
 adjustment does not affect highlight or midtone colors.
- Restore defaults. Resets factory defaults for the Print Density settings on the printer.
- NOTE: Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

Paper Types

Use the **Paper Types** screen to map the print modes that the printer will use for each paper type.

Figure 2-28 HP ToolboxFX Paper Types screen

vices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP20	25dn		
■ Known Printers ■ ■ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Se			Shop for Supplies	?
🗉 🚞 Status	Paper Types			
Alerts Product Information	Plain:	Normal Mode		
🗉 🔚 Help	Bond:	Heavy Mode		
Device Settings Device Information	Color:			
Paper Handling	Letterhead:			
Printing		Normal Mode 🗸		
PostScript	Preprinted:	Normal Mode 🗸 🗸		
Print Quality	Prepunched:	Normal Mode 🖌 🖌		
Print Density	Recycled:	Normal Mode 👻		
Extended Print Modes	Rough:	Heavy Mode 🔽		
🖹 System Setup 📄 Save / Restore Settings	Heavy Rough:	Cardstock Mode 🖌 🗸		
	Restore modes			
ner Links				
	1			
HP Instant Support				
Support and Troubleshooting				
Online HP Offers				

The purpose of this menu is to specify the engine print mode for paper types that are non-specific. Also, the Plain paper type can be remapped for workflow reasons. A print mode is a special setting that controls the print speed and the fuser temperature of the printer. The product speed and fuser temperature are adjusted to match the print mode selected, which can result in better print quality when printing on certain paper types.

- ▲ WARNING! Printing on heavier paper, such as glossy or photo paper, without setting the correct print mode can cause damage to the printer.
- **NOTE:** Not all of the paper types listed in the driver can be adjusted on the **Paper Types** screen.

able 2-3 Standard print modes			
Standard print modes	Target media/weight	Print speed	Color tables
Normal Mode	75-90 g/m2	Full speed	Plain
Heavy Mode	90-130 g/m2	3/4 speed	Plain
Cardstock Mode	131-175 g/m2	3/4 speed	Plain
Light Mode	60-74 g/m2	Full speed	Plain

Table 2-3 Standard print modes (continued)

Standard print modes	Target media/weight	Print speed	Color tables
Light Glossy Mode	105-130 g/m2	3/4 speed	Glossy
Glossy Mode	131-175 g/m2	3/4 speed	Glossy
Heavy Glossy Mode	176-220 g/m2	3/4 speed	Glossy
Tough Paper Mode	Tough Paper	3/4 speed	Glossy
Transparency Mode	Transparencies	3/4 speed	Overhead Transparency (OHT)
Label Mode	Labels	3/4 speed	Plain

Extended Print Modes screen

Use the **Extended Print Modes** screen to adjust the printing process to optimize print quality for various paper types and sizes.

	HP Color LaserJet CP2025	dn			
wn Printers					Shop for S <u>u</u> pplies
IP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie					
Alorts	Extended Print Modes				
Product Information	rint Modes				Toner
Device Settings	Media Type	Fusing No adjustment	Transfer No adjustment	Duplex Transfer No adjustment	
Device Information	Plain:				
Paper Handling	HP LaserJet 90g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 👻
PCL5	HP Color LaserJet Matte 105g:	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment
Print Quality	HP Premium Choice Matte 120g:	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻
Print Density	HP Color Laser Brochure Matte	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸
Extended Print Modes	I 60g: HP Matte 200g:	More Fusing (+1)	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment	No adjustment
E System Setup	- HP Presentation Glossy 130g:				
Password		No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 💌	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment
Network Settings	HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment
H C	HP Tri-fold Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment
,	HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 👻
L	light 60-74g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment
,	Mid-Weight 96-110g:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment	No adjustment
	Heavy 111-130g:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment	No adjustment
	Extra Heavy 131-175g:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻
,	Heavy Glossy 111-130g:	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment 👻
E	Edra Heavy Glossy 131-175g:	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment
	Card Glossy 176-220g:	No adjustment 💌	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🗸 🗸	No adjustment
1	Fransparency:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment
	_abels:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment	No adjustment
	_etterhead:				
E	Envelope:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment
,	Heavy Envelope:	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻
F	Preprinted:	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 🛛 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment
F	Prepunched:	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 👻
	Color:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment
	Bond:		No adjustment 🗸		
	Recycled:	No adjustment 🖌	No adjustment 🖌	No adjustment 👻	No adjustment 🗸
F	Rough Paper:	No adjustment 👻	Rough paper 💌	Rough paper 👻	No adjustment
	Heavy Rough:	No adjustment 👻	Rough paper 💌	Rough paper 👻	No adjustment
	HP Tough paper:	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment 🗸	No adjustment

Figure 2-29	HP ToolboxFX Extended	Print Modes screen (1 of 2)

Table 2-4 Print Modes — Fusing

Fusing adjustments	Range (*default)	Description	
Paper curl-up	Off*/On	This setting is used for dry climates light paper. This setting optimizes fu temperature for paper with the ends curled up in the output tray.	
Paper curl-down	Off*/On	This setting optimizes fuser temperature for paper with the ends curled down in the output tray.	

Table 2-4 Print Modes — Fusing (continued)

Fusing adjustments	Range (*default)	Description
Flap sealing	Off*/On	This setting reduces fuser temperature for envelope print modes to reduce flap sealing.
Less/More fusing	Off*/-2 to +2	These settings give four levels of direct control of fuser temperature.

Table 2-5 Print Modes — Transfer

Transfer adjustments (only first side)	Range (*default)	Description
Dry paper	Off*/On	
Humid paper	Off*/On	
Rough paper	Off*/On	
Less/More transfer	Off*/5 to +5	

Table 2-6 Print Modes — Duplex Transfer

Duplex transfer adjustments (only second side)	Range (*default)	Description
Dry paper	Off*/On	This setting optimizes the transfer voltage (between the transfer belt and paper) for dry conditions or high resistivity paper.
Humid paper	Off*/On	This setting optimizes the transfer voltage for humid conditions.
Rough paper	Off*/On	This setting optimizes the transfer voltage for rough, textured papers.
Less/More transfer	Off*/–5 to +5	These settings give ten levels of direct control of transfer voltage.

Table 2-7 Print Modes — Toner

Less toner adjustments	Range (*default)	Description	
Less toner	Off*/-1 to -3	These settings give ten levels of direct control of transfer voltage.	

Optimize		
Background Toner	n 0	
Background Toner 2	Off 🗸	
Extra Drum Cleaning	Off	
Drum Banding	off	
Registration	orr	
Tray 1	om	
Re-Transfer	Off	
Jam Reduction	Off	
Heavy Media Optimization	off 🗸	
Transfer Belt Cleaning	No adjustment	
Transfer Belt Cleaning Voltage	No adjustment	
Transfer Belt Voltage - Y	No adjustment	
Transfer Belt Voltage - M	No adjustment	
Transfer Belt Voltage - C	No adjustment	
Transfer Belt Voltage - K	No adjustment	
ant Support	Apply	
t and Troubleshooting		
HP Offers		
t Registration		

The Extended Print Modes screen contains a Print Modes section and an Optimize section.

Adjustment	Range (*default)	Description
Background Toner	Off*/On	Optimize printer settings to reduce background toner. (Glossy paper picks up background toner more readily than plain paper.)
Background Toner 2		This is designated when a background of small vertical lines appears on the image.
Extra Drum Cleaning	Off*/On	Talc from paper with high talc content gets coated on the imaging drums and degrades the image quality. The printer will use extra cleaning rotations when stopping to eliminate this coating on the drums.
sharp lines at the OPC drum mm) by extra prerotations and the drums slightly after each j		This mode reduces the occurrence of sharp lines at the OPC drum pitch (75 mm) by extra prerotations and by jogging the drums slightly after each job. The jogging motion is slightly audible.
Registration		Extends the pre-rotation and post- rotation sequences.
Tray 1		When this option is turned on and a print job is printing from Tray 1 using the universal size command, which is the default, the printer will clean the belt every time the printer spins down.
Re-Transfer		This setting reduces or eliminates re- transfer.

Table 2-8 Optimize modes

Table 2-8 Optimize modes (continued)

Adjustment	Range (*default)	Description
Jam Reduction		When this setting is turned on, the interpage gap is increased. Printing performance is reduced slightly.
Heavy Media Optimization		
Transfer Belt Cleaning	Off*/+1 to +2	This mode increases transfer belt (ITB) cleaning effectiveness by increasing the ICL (ITB Cleaning) roller/brush voltage for the +1 setting, and by increasing cleaning frequency for the +2 setting. This should be used when the ghost of previous heavy coverage pages appears on following pages.
Transfer Belt Cleaning Voltage	Off*/–5 to +5	This adjustment allows fine control of the ICL roller/brush voltage. Decreasing the voltage is better for OPC drum ghosting. Increasing the voltage is better for heavy coverage cleaning.
Transfer Belt Voltage – Y	Off*/–5 to +5	This adjustment allows fine control of the Yellow station OPC-to-ITB transfer voltage. (There is currently no known defect associated with this adjustment.)
Transfer Belt Voltage – M	Off*/–5 to +5	This adjustment allows fine control of the Magenta station OPC-to-ITB transfer voltage. (There is currently no known defect associated with this adjustment.)
Transfer Belt Voltage – C	Off*/–5 to +5	This adjustment allows fine control of the Cyan station OPC-to-ITB transfer voltage. (There is currently no known defect associated with this adjustment.)
Transfer Belt Voltage – K	Off*/-5 to +5	This adjustment allows fine control of the Cyan station OPC-to-ITB transfer voltage. (There is currently no known defect associated with this adjustment.)

System Setup

Use the **System Setup** screen to change settings on the printer such as Jam Recover andy Auto Continue.

Figure 2-31 HP ToolboxFX System Setup screen

	FX		
HP Toolbox	FX HP Color LaserJet CP20254n System Setup Note: All of the settings on this page apply t your device. Jam recovery: Auto continue: Connection time-out (I/O): Cartridge low threshold:	to all print jobs processed by Auto Off 120 seconds (5 - 7200) 6 % (1 - 20)	Shop for Supplies 2
 HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers Product Registration 			Apply

The following Jam recovery settings are available:

- Auto (default)
- On
- Off

The following Auto continue settings are available:

- On
- Off (default)

Set the Connection time-out (I/O) setting to any value from 5 to 7200 seconds (default is 120).

Set the **Cartridge low threshold** setting to any value from 1 to 20% (default is 6%). The **Cartridge low threshold** option sets the percentage threshold that triggers a toner low alert in HP ToolboxFX.

NOTE: Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

Save/Restore Settings

Use the **Save/Restore Settings** screen to save all of the product settings to a file on the computer. The settings that have been saved into the printer can also be loaded from this screen.

Figure 2-32	ΗP	ToolboxFX	Save/Restore	Settings	screen
-------------	----	-----------	--------------	----------	--------



When you click **Save**, the **Save as** dialog box might be hidden. Look behind the browser window or on the taskbar.

Settings that were saved from a previous HP product cannot be restored. Only settings that were saved from an HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer can be restored.

NOTE: HP ToolboxFX will not function until settings have been fully loaded and the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer control panel returns to the **Ready** state.

Password

Use this screen to set or change the Administrator password.

Figure 2-33 HP ToolboxFX Password screen

HP ToolboxFX	
	FX
Devices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
🗉 🚞 Known Printers	🚊 🥹 Shop for Supplies 🔅 ?
 ■ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Se ■ Status ■ Alerts 	Password
Product Information Product Information Product Information	Use the fields below to set or change the password for this device. When set, this password will be required before you can access and change most settings. To disable the password, leave the entries blank, and click "Apply".
Device Settings Device Information	Password:
Paper Handling	Confirm password:
Printing	
PostScript	
Print Quality	
Print Density Paper Types	
Extended Print Modes	
📄 Save / Restore Settings 🥃	
Other Links	
HP Instant Support	
Support and Troubleshooting	
Online HP Offers	
Product Registration	Apply
	2017-17

Network administrators can set user passwords to protect network settings. After a password is set, only users who know the password have access to certain screens within HP ToolboxFX. If a password has been set, users are prompted to type the password. If the typed-in password matches the password stored in the printer, users can navigate through the password protected screens and make changes to the settings.

If the password is lost or forgotten, the factory settings for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer must be restored and a new password assigned.

NOTE: Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

The following HP ToolboxFX features become locked when a password is set:

- Shop for Supplies button
- HP Instant Support link
- System Setup screens
- Print settings screens
- Network Settings screens
- Event Log screen

NOTE: Setting a password on this screen also sets the password for the HP EWS.

Network Settings folder

The Network Settings folder is only available with a network installation.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printers contain onboard networking support. This printer model does not require the use of an external Jetdirect box for network connectivity. Use **Network Settings** options to configure the network settings for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

For network installations, HP ToolboxFX communicates with the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer by using the network settings that appear on the following **Network Settings** screens:

- Network Summary
- IPv4 Configuration
- IPv6 Configuration
- Network Identification
- Advanced
- <u>SNMP</u>
- △ CAUTION: Changing network settings can cause communication problems between HP ToolboxFX and the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

othoxFX // HP Toolbo>	(FX		
25	冒 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn		
Known Printers			Shop for Supplies
🗃 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie			
∎ 🗃 Status ∎ 🗃 Alerts	Network Settings		
Product Information	TCP/IP(v4) Status:	Ready	
■ 🛅 Help ■ 🛅 Device Settings	IPv4 address:	192.168.0.10	
🖃 🚞 Network Settings	Subnet mask:	255.255.255.0	
Network Summary	Default gateway: IP configured by:	192.168.0.1 Configured by DHCP	
IPv4 Configuration IPv6 Configuration	DHCP/BOOTP server: DHCP expiration time:	192.168.0.1 01:19:00 (days:hours:minutes)	
Network Identification	WINS server:	192.68.0.200	
Advanced			
	TCP/IP(v6)	Death	
	Status:	Ready	
	Link-Local address: Stateless (from Router):	FE80::21A:4BFF:FE27:2CC4 Not configured	
	Stateful (from DHCPv6):	Not configured	
	Network Identification		
	Host name:	NPI272CC4	
	Domain name (IPv4/IPv6): Domain name (IPv6 only):	anyone@yourdomain.com	
	Bonjour Service name: Bonjour Domain name:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn (2 NPI272CC4.local.	
	Network Hardware Configuration Hardware address:	XXXXXXXXXXXX	
	Firmware datecode: Link speed and duplex negotiation:	20080220 Automatic	
	Link speed:	100 Mbps	
	Duplex: Automatic crossover:	Full On	
	Connection time-out (I/O):	120	
	SNMP		
	Status:	Read-Write access enabled	
	SNMP version:	v1	
	Set Community name: Get Community name:	Not Specified (Defaults to "public") Not Specified (Defaults to "public")	
		, ,,	
	Network Statistics Total packets received:	1221541	
	Unicast packets received: Bad packets received:	34656 0	
	Framing errors received:	0	
	Total packets transmitted: Unsendable packets:	68132 0	
	Transmit collisions: Transmit late collisions:	0 0	
	Enabled Features		
	IPv4: IPv6:	Enabled Enabled	
	LPD printing:	Enabled	
	Bonjour: SLP:	Enabled Enabled	
	WS-Discovery: SNMP:	Enabled Enabled	
Links	Show IPv4 address on control panel: DHCPv6:	Disabled Enabled	
	DITCEVO.	LINADIEU	
HP Instant Support	11		
HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting			
Support and Troubleshooting			

Figure 2-34 HP ToolboxFX Network Settings screen

Network Summary

The **Network Summary** screen provides an overview of the network settings that are enabled for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Figure 2-35 HP ToolboxFX Network Summary sci	creen – Network Settings folder
--	---------------------------------



The settings appear under the following headings:

- TCP/IP(v4)
- TCP/IP(v6)
- Network Identification
- Network Hardware Configuration
- SNMP
- Network Statistics
- Enabled Features

IPv4 Configuration

Use the IPv4 Configuration screen to modify settings for basic TCP/IPv4 Network configuration.

If **Automatic IP** is configured, the **Manual IP** Address configuration settings are disabled, but the values for these settings are still displayed if they have been set.

If the configuration is switched from **Automatic IP** to **Manual IP**, the **IP Address** fields are cleared, and you must enter the IP address before continuing.

Click **Apply** to keep changes. When **Apply** is clicked, a confirmation dialog box appears for confirmation. Click **Yes** to continue.



ices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP2	025dn			
Known Printers				Shop for S <u>u</u> pplies	
 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 E Status Alerts 	IPv4 Configurat	ion			
Product Information	IPv4 enabled				
■ ➡ Help ■ ➡ Device Settings	IP configured by:	Configured by DHCP			
🖃 🛅 Network Settings	Host name:	NPI272CC4	Default configuration		
Network Summary IPv4 Configuration	Domain name:	anyone@yourdomain.com	Configured by DHCP		
IPv6 Configuration Network Identification	IP Address Configuration				
Advanced		nese settings may result in loss o	of connectivity with the		
	 Automatic IP 	🔿 Manual IP			
	DHCP				
	BOOTP				
	V AUTOIP				
	IP address:	192 168 0	10		
	Subnet mask:		~		
· Links	Default gateway:	192 168 0	1		
	WINS server	192 68 0	200		
HP Instant Support					
Support and Troubleshooting					
Online HP Offers					
Product Registration				A	pply

IPv6 Configuration

The **IPv6 Configuration** screen shows the status of the IPv6 Network configuration settings. This screen is read-only and no settings can be modified here.

Up to seven IPv6 addresses can be shown on this screen, depending upon the automatic configuration of the networking firmware. All available IPv6 addresses are shown.

Figure 2-37 HP ToolboxFX IPv6 Configuration screen

vices	📄 HP C	olor LaserJet CP2025	ōdn						
) 🛅 Known Printers		}					Shop for Su	oplies	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Status Alerts	Serie IPv6	Configuratio	n						
Product Information	IPv6	enabled							
	Host	name:	NPI2	72CC4	Default (configuration			
Bence Settings Elements Elements Elements Network Summary	Dom	ain name:			Default (configuration			
IPv4 Configuration	IPv6 Add	resses							
IPv6 Configuration Network Identification	Config by	Address value	Prefix length	Preferred lifetime *	Valid lifetime *				
Advanced	Link-Local	FE80::21A:48FF:FE27:2CC4	64	Infinite	Infinite				
her Links	* Lifetime	e format: Days:Hours:Minu	tes						
🗟 HP Instant Support									
Support and Troubleshooting									
🕙 Online HP Offers									
Product Registration									

Network Identification

Use the **Network Identification** screen to configure the host name and domain name(s) used to identify the product on the network.

The values for host name and domain names are retrieved from the firmware and displayed on this screen. The networking firmware determines the host name and domain name(s) to use. This information cannot be modified.

The text entries are disabled under certain circumstances. The following table defines when the entities are disabled:

Text entry	Disabled status
Host name	Disabled if configured by BOOTP
Domain name (IPv4/IPv6)	Disabled if configured by BOOTP, DHCPv4, or DHCPv6

Table 2-9 Network Identification screen – Text entries (continued)

Text entry	Disabled status
Domain name (IPv6)	Disabled if configured by DHCPv6
Bonjour Service name	Disabled if Bonjour is disabled

Figure 2-38 HP ToolboxFX Network Identification screen

	FX					
Devices	冒 HP Color LaserJet CP202	25dn				
🗉 🛅 Known Printers	E 🛿			Shop for S <u>u</u> p	plies ?	
 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie Status Alerts 	Network Identification					
■ Product Information ■ Help	Warning: Changes to these settings may result in loss of connectivity with the device.					
■ ■ Device Settings	Current Settings					
Network Summary	Host name:	NPI272CC4		Default configuration		
IPv4 Configuration IPv6 Configuration	Domain name (IPv4/IPv6):	sakson.corp		Configured by DHCP		
Network Identification	Domain name (IPv6 only):			Default configuration		
Advanced	Bonjour Service name:	HP Color LaserJet CP20	5dn (272CC4)]		
E SNMP	Bonjour Domain name:	NPI272CC4.local.				
	Host name Priority Options					
	 Use BOOTP, manual, or default supplied Host name 					
	○ Use DHCPv4 supplied Host name					
	○ Use DHCPv6 supplied Host name					
	Available Host names / Domain Default Host name:		272CC4			
	BOOTP/DHCPv4 supplied	d Host name: Not	set			
	BOOTP/DHCPv4 supplied	d Domain name: any	one@yourdom	ain.com		
<pre></pre>	DHCPv6 supplied Host na	ime: Not	set			
Other Links	DHCPv6 supplied Domain	name: Not	set			
HP Instant Support Support and Troubleshooting Online HP Offers	Restore all Host name ar	nd Domain name settings to	their default va	lues		
Product Registration				Арріу		

Advanced

Use the **Advanced** screen to configure the enabled settings and other settings, such as link speed, for the printer.

Figure 2-39 HP ToolboxFX Advanced screen

HP Toolbox	(FX				
evices	📳 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn				
a 🚞 Known Printers	E Ø	Shop for Supplies			
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie Status Alerts	Advanced				
 ■ ■ Product Information ■ ■ Help 	Warning: Changes to these settings device.	may result in loss of connectivity with the			
	Enabled Features				
Network Summary	SLP	VIPv4			
IPv4 Configuration	LPD Printing	✓ IPv6			
Network Identification	Show IPv4 address on control panel	🕑 Bonjour			
Advanced		✓ WS-Discovery			
in order		☑ DHCPv6			
	Other Settings				
	Restore all network settings to their fac	tory default values			
her Links					
HP Instant Support					
Support and Troubleshooting					
Online HP Offers					
Product Registration	11	Apply			

The following table shows the options and settings that are available for the **Advanced** screen.

Option	Settings
Enabled Features	SLP (enabled by default)
	LPD Printing (enabled by default)
	Show IPv4 address on conrol panel
	• IPv4
	• IPv6
	Bonjour
	WS-Discovery
	DHCPv6
	NOTE: All of these features are enabled by default except for Show IPv4 address on conrol panel .
Other Settings	Restore all network settings to their factory default values.

NOTE: Click **Apply** to make the changes take effect.

SNMP

Use this screen to configure the SNMP networking settings for the printer.

Figure 2-40 HP ToolboxFX SNMP screen

HP ToolboxFX		
	FX	
Devices	🖶 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
🗉 🚞 Known Printers	E 8	Shop for Supplies ?
 ■ ➡ HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Serie ■ ➡ Status ■ ➡ Alerts 	SNMP	
Product Information Help Device Settings	Warning: Changing these settings can potentially disrupt network functionality.	
■ ■ Device Settings ■ ■ Network Settings ■ ■ Network Summary	ⓒ Enable SNMP v1 read-write access	
Pv4 Configuration	O Enable SNMP v1 read-only access	
 IPv6 Configuration Network Identification Advanced 	○ Disable SNMP v1	
SNMP	Set Community name:	
	Confirm Set Community name:	
	Get Community name:	
<	Confirm Get Community name:	
Other Links	□ Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of "public"	
HP Instant Support		
Support and Troubleshooting		
Online HP Offers		
Product Registration		Apply

The following options are available on the **SNMP** screen.

Table 2-11	SNMP	options	and	settings
------------	------	---------	-----	----------

Options	Description		
Enable SNMP v1 read-write access	Select this option to enable SNMP v1 agents on the printer. Custom community names can be configured to control management access to the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. These community name settings appear on the lower half of the screen.		
	Set Community name:	Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.	
	Confirm Set Community name:	Retype the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.	
	Get Community name:	Type the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the printer.	
	Confirm Get Community name:	Retype the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the printer.	
	Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of "public"	Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". After selecting this option, type the values in the Get Community name and Confirm Get Community name fields.	

Table 2-11 SNMP options and settings (continued)

Enable SNMP v1 read-only access (uses "public" for the Get Community value)	Select this option to enable the SNMP v1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, but limit access to read-only. Write-access is disabled. The default Get Community name "public" is automatically enabled.			
	Set Community name:	Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.		
	Configure Get Community name:			
	Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of "public":	Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". After selecting this option, type the values in the Get Community name and Confirm Get Community name fields.		
Disable SNMP v1	Select this option to disable the SNMP v1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet CP202 Series printer, which is recommended for secure environments. If SNMP v1 is disabled, some port monitors or discovery utilities might not operate properly.			
Apply	Click Apply to make the changes take effect.			

Other screens

The following table lists screens that are also available through HP ToolboxFX.

Table 2-12 HP ToolboxFX – Other screens

Screen	Access
About HP ToolboxFX screen	Click the HP logo that appears in the upper-left corner of the HP ToolboxFX screens.
HP Instant Support screen	Click the HP Instant Support link in the Other Links box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Support and Troubleshooting screen	Click the Support and Troubleshooting link in the Other Links box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Product Registration screen	Click the Product Registration link in the Other Links box that appears on all HP ToolboxFX and HP EWS screens.
Shop for Supplies screen	Click the Shop for Supplies link in the upper-right corner of the HP ToolboxFX screens.

About HP ToolboxFX dialog box

Click the HP logo in the HP ToolboxFX heading banner on any HP ToolboxFX screen to gain access to the **About HP ToolboxFX** dialog box. This dialog box shows the software version number and a

copyright notice. This dialog box also shows the version number for each HP ToolboxFX product that is installed.

Figure 2-41 About HP ToolboxFX screen

×
6

HP Instant Support

Click **HP Instant Support** to gain access to self-help based on information sent from the product to the HP Web site. The help includes recommendations for troubleshooting, firmware upgrades, and reference documentation that is customized to respond to the most recent events that have occurred on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Support and Troubleshooting

Select **Support and Troubleshooting** to get to a Web page with links to online support for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Product Registration

The **Product Registration** link connects to a Web page to register the printer.

Shop for Supplies

The **Shop for Supplies** link connects to a Web page that can be used to order supplies online. The supplies do not come from HP, but from a choice of resellers. The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supplies are preselected. Use the options on this screen to change quantities or order additional items. The selected items are dropped into the shopping cart, ready for checkout. This process ensures that the correct supplies are ordered through the selected reseller.

HP Embedded Web Server

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a Web server in the product that allows users to control settings on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer through the Web browser. The HP EWS is available only if the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is installed through a network rather than a USB connection.

To gain access to the HP EWS, open a Web browser and type the printer IP address in the address bar.

The printer IP address is documented on a configuration page. Print a configuration page by following these steps on the product control panel:

- 1. Press **OK** to open the menus.
- 2. Press the Left arrow or Right arrow to navigate to Main menu/Reports. Press OK.
- 3. Press the Left arrow or Right arrow to navigate to Reports/Config report. Press OK.
- 4. Find the IP address on the printed sheet beneath the Product Settings heading.

The following tabs are available in the HP EWS:

- Status tab
- Settings tab
- Networking tab

Status tab

Use the **Status** tab to gain access to and print detailed information regarding product and supply status, product configuration, network configuration, and usage.

The Status tab contains the following screens:

- Device Status
- Supplies Status
- Device Configuration
- Network Summary
- Print Info Pages
- Color Usage Job Log
- Event Log

Device Status

The **Device Status** screen shows status messages from the product. The **Device Status** screen also contains some pertinent printer information and product settings.

		et CP2025dn			
Color LaserJet CP2	025dn 192.168.0.1	0			
Status	Settings	Networking			
Device Status		Device Status			
Supplies Status		Device Status		Sh	op for Supplies Support
Device Configuration	n	Device Status			
Network Summary					
Print Info Pages		Status: PowerSave	on 🚭		
Color Usage Job Log Event Log	3				
		Supplies Summary			
		Supply	Level	Order HP Part:	Approximate Pages Remaining
		Supply Black Cartridge	Level		
				Part:	Remaining
		Black Cartridge	94%	Part: CC530A	Remaining Gathering Data
		Black Cartridge Cyan Cartridge	94%	Part: CC530A CC531A	Remaining Gathering Data 398

Figure 2-42 HP EWS Device Status screen

Supplies Status

The **Supplies Status** screen provides detailed information about the cyan, magenta, yellow, and black print cartridges. This information is not available if a non-HP cartridge is installed in the product.

Figure 2-43 HP EWS Supplies Status screen

Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168	10.10	
Status Settings	Networking	
evice Status		
upplies Status	Supplies Status	Shop for Supplies Support
evice Configuration		
etwork Summary	Ordering Information:	ing the second second second second second second second second
rint Info Pages	Hewlett-Packard supplies can be ordered on the Internet, on-li authorized reseller. Refer to your printer User Guide for instru	
olor Usage Job Log		
vent Log	Black Cartridge Order HP Part: CC530A 949	%
	Approximate Pages Remaining: Gathering Da (Available after 25% of use) Low Reached:	ata No
	Serial Number: 55174912	
	Pages Printed With This Supply: 18 First Install Date: Not Availab	86 ble
	Last Used Date: 200803	
	Cuen Casteidae	
	Cyan Cartridge 729 Order HP Part: CC531A 729	~
	Approximate Pages Remaining: 40	 02
	(Pages remaining will vary depending on the types of documents printer Low Reached:	:d.) No
	Serial Number: 54683392	21
	Pages Printed With This Supply: 16 First Install Date: 2007093	60 24
	Last Used Date: 200803	
	Magenta Cartridge 74 Order HP Part: CC533A 74	%
	Approximate Pages Remaining: 44	46
	(Pages remaining will vary depending on the types of documents printe	ed.)
	Low Reached: N Serial Number: 54781690	No 162
	Pages Printed With This Supply: 10	60
	First Install Date: 2007093 Last Used Date: 2008033	
	Vellow Cartridge 659 Order HP Part: CC532A	%
	Approximate Pages Remaining: 23	96
	(Pages remaining will vary depending on the types of documents printe	ed.)
	Low Reached: 5545671	No 70
	Pages Printed With This Supply: 10	60
	First Install Date: 2007093 Last Used Date: 2008033	
	Last used Date: 200803.	20
	Return & Resycling	
	Return & Recycling	***
Device Configuration

The **Device Configuration** screen shows the values for all of the settings available for the product and other configuration items, such as installed DIMMs, personalities, and page counts. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page that the firmware generates.

HP Color Las	serJet CP2025dn	
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.	168.0.10	
Status Settin	gs Networking	
evice Status	Device Configuration	
Supplies Status		Shop for Supplies Support
evice Configuration	Product Information	
etwork Summary	Product Name:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
rint Info Pages	Formatter Number:	MB0012H
olor Usage Job Log	Product Serial Number:	XXXXXXXXXXXXXX
vent Log	Service ID:	17240
	Firmware Datecode:	20080220
	Location:	15
	Max Monochrome Print Quality:	600×8
	Max Color Print Quality:	ImageREt 3600
	Controller Number:	8
	Device Description:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
	Language:	English
	Asset Number: Company Name:	
	Contact Person:	
	Password:	Not Specified
	Hardware Address:	00:1a:4b:27:2c:c4
	Host Name:	NPI272CC4
	IPv4 Address:	192.168.0.10
	Show IPv4 Address on Control	Disabled
	Panel:	
	IPv6 Address:	FE80::21A:4BFF:FE27:2CC4
	Total Memory: Available Memory:	128 MBytes 109.35 MBytes
	Installed Personalities and Options	
	PCL5 PostScript	
	PCLXL	
	DIMM Slot 1:	Empty
	Page Counts	
	Total Pages Printed:	1048
	Color Pages Printed:	932
	Duplex Pages Printed:	12
	Pages Mispicked in Printer:	9
	Pages Jammed in Printer:	0
	PCL6 Pages Printed:	27
	PS Pages Printed:	0
	PCL Pages Printed:	0
	Paper Settings	
	Paper Size:	Letter
	Paper Type:	Plain
	Tray 1 Size:	Any size
	Tray 1 Type: Tray 2 Size:	Any Type Any size
	Tray 2 Size: Tray 2 Type:	Any size Any Type
	Paper Out Action:	Wait Forever
	Manual Feed:	Off
	Duplex:	Off
	Bind:	Long Edge
	Plain:	Normal
	HP Matte 90g:	Heavy
	HP Matte 105g:	Heavy
	HP Matte 120g:	Extra Heavy
	HP Matte 160g:	Card stock
	HP Matte 200g: HP Glossy 130g:	Card stock Light Glossy

Figure 2-45 HP EWS Device Configuration screen (2 of 2)

HP Tri Glossy 280; Heavy Olossy 140; Light 60-740; Light 60-740; Lig	INS Device Configuration	on scre	een (2	0T Z)			
Light 60 - 74g: Light Nick Weight 96 - 10g: Heavy Heavy 711-130g: Extra Heavy / Extra Heavy Glossy 113 - 175g: Cod docs Carl Glossy 113 - 175g: Clossy Transparency: Transparency Labels: Labels: Labels: Labels: Envelope: Heavy Okcesy 114: Envelope: Transparency: Preprinted: Normal Envelope: Heavy Envelope Heavy Structope Heavy Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Bond: Heavy Heavy Bruegop: Transparency Rough: Cod cock HP Tough Paper: Toujh Paper Print Settings 1 Courier Font: Rough Paper Vide A1 No Griptis: 1 Connection Timeout (UO): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Xato Font Source: 1 Group Source: 10:00 Print Setting: 20:10:3 Suphol Set: </th <th>HP Tri Glossy 160g:</th> <th>Glossy</th> <th>y</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>	HP Tri Glossy 160g:	Glossy	y				
Nici-Weight 8E-110g: Extra Heavy Heavy 111-130g: Extra Heavy Extra Heavy 131-176g: Card dicksy Heavy Glossy 111-130g: Light Glossy Card Glossy 117-52Q: Heavy Glossy Card Glossy 117-52Q: Heavy Glossy Labels: Label Labels: Label Labels: Normal Envelope: Freegope: Preprinted: Normal Envelope: Heavy Evelope: Preprinted: Normal Golored: Normal Bond: Heavy Freefope Rough: Card stock Heavy Rough:	HP Glossy 220g:	Heavy	Glossy				
Heavy 11-130g: Extra Heavy Extra Heavy Glossy 113-175g: Card dook Heavy Glossy 113-175g: Glossy Card Glossy 117-220g: Heavy Glossy 1 Transparency: Transparency Labels: Label Letterhead: Normal Envelope: Heavy Envelope Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope Prepunched: Normal Prepunched: Normal Rough: Heavy Rough: Heavy Rough: Heavy Rough: Heavy Rough: Heavy Rough: Card dock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings 1 Cornection Timeout (J00): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Auto Continue: 0ff Gories 120 Fort Number: 23 Print Settings 120 Print Size: 23 Print PS Frons: 24 Apped CR to LF: No Symbol Set: Color Enabled <th>Light 60-74g:</th> <th>Light</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>	Light 60-74g:	Light					
Extra Heavy 31.175g: Light Glossy i Heavy Glossy 111-130g: Light Glossy i Card Glossy 175-220g: Heavy Clossy i Transparency: Transparency i Labels: Label Labels: Label Labels: Briesparency i Heavy Fruelope: Evelope Preprinted: Normal Rough: Heavy Envelope Preprinted: Normal Rough: Heavy Envelope Rough: Heavy Envelope Rough: Heavy Envelope: Rough: Card dtock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper: Print Settings 1 Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Rogular Condition: P (Portrat) Vivide A4 No Font Source: I ((frema) Fort Kumber: 23 Jam Recovery: Auto Symbol Set: PC-0 Fort Kumber: 12 Symbol Set: Color enabed Form: Color enabe	Mid-Weight 96-110g:	Heavy					
Heavy Glossy 111-130g: Light Glossy 7 X-thryGlossy 111-176g: Glossy 7 Goldosy 176-220g: Heavy Glossy 7 Transparency: Labels: Labels: Label Labels: Labels Labels: Label Envelope: Envelope: Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Bond: Heavy Trivelope Preprinted: Normal Bond: Heavy Respeled: Normal Bond: Heavy Respeled: Normal Rough: Heavy Heavy Bough: Card stock Havy Rough: Glost State Heavy Rough: Card stock Having Paper: Tough Paper: Print Settings 1 Gopies: 1 Gonier Font: Regular Orientation: P(Gotrat) Mide A4 No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Ado Fort Source: 120 Cord	Heavy 111-130g:	Extra H	Heavy				
X-HayGlossy 131-1750: Glossy Card Glossy 175-2200: Heavy Clossy Transparency Labels: Labels: Label Labels: Label Labels: Normal Envelope: Heavy Envelope Haavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope Prepunched: Normal Golored: Normal Bond: Heavy Recycled: Normal Rough: Calored: Normal Heavy Rough: Calored: Normal Heavy Rough: Calored: Normal Heavy Rough: Calored: Normal Heavy Rough: Calored: Rough: Calored: No Latein Rough: Calored: No Internation: Print Settinge Internation: Print Settinge Internation: No Internation: Symbol Set: Print Settinge Print No No	Extra Heavy 131-175g:	Card s	stock				
Card Glossy 176-220g: Heavy Glossy Transparency: Transparency: Tansparency: Label Labels: Normal Envelope: Envelope: Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Bond: Heavy Envelope Glored: Normal Bond: Heavy Recycled: Normal Bond: Heavy Recycled: Normal Heavy Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper: Print Setting: 1 Cornection Timeout (I/O): 120 seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Auto Continue: Off Orientation: P(Portrat) Vide At: No Font Number: 23 Jam Recovery: Auto Fort Source: I (Internal) Font Number: 23 Symbol Set: Color Enabled Print Setric Color: No Mono print (color out): No	Heavy Glossy111-130g:	Light G	Эlossy				
Transparency: Transparency: Labels: Label Labels: Normal Envelope: Envelope: Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Prepunched: Normal Colored: Normal Bond: Heavy: RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal Hoagy Envelope:: Tough Paper: RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings 1 Copies: 1 Coniertion: Peylar Orientation: Peylar Orientation: Peylar Font Source: 1(nterna) Jam Recovery: Atá No - Symbol Set: Peylar Fort Number: 200 Symbol Set: Pint No Print Setrors: C	X-HvyGlossy 131-175g:	Glossy	1				
Transparency: Transparency: Labels: Label Labels: Normal Envelope: Envelope: Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Heavy Envelope:: Heavy Envelope: Prepunched: Normal Colored: Normal Bond: Heavy: RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal Hoagy Envelope:: Tough Paper: RegyEdd: Normal RegyEdd: Normal Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings 1 Copies: 1 Coniertion: Peylar Orientation: Peylar Orientation: Peylar Font Source: 1(nterna) Jam Recovery: Atá No - Symbol Set: Peylar Fort Number: 200 Symbol Set: Pint No Print Setrors: C	Card Glossy 176-220g:	Heavy	Glossy				
Letterhead:NormalEnvelope:EnvelopePreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalBongh:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Tough Paper:Print SettingsAuto Continue:OffCopies:1Courier Font:RegularCourier Font:RegularOrientation:P (Portrat)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 secondsJam Recoverg:AutoJam Recoverg:AutoFont Suurce:I (Interna)Font Suurce:I (Interna)Pitch:10.00Point Size:20.01Symbol Set:PC-8Append CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:Color EnabledNono print (color out):NoLow Threshold:6Restrict Color:15 MinutesPrint Bensity:Color EnabledPowerSwe Time:15 MinutesPrint Density:0Midtones:00O00Midtones:00O00							
Letterhead: Normal Envelope: Envelope Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Preprinted: Normal Bond: Heavy RecycledI: Normal Bond: Heavy RecycledI: Normal RecycledI: Normal Heavy Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper: Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Copies: 1 Orientation: P (Portrat) Wide At: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: I (Internal) Font Source: 10.00 Pioint Size: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 24 Append Cito LF: No Mono print (color out): No Supply out override enabled: No Mono print (color out): No Lowi Threshold:	Labels:	Label					
Heavy Envelope:Heavy EnvelopePreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalBond:HeavyBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalBough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Tough Paper:Print SettingsAuto Continue:OffCopies:1Courier Font:RegularOrientation:P (Portrat)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoPint Size:23Pint Size:10.00Point Size:01 (Internal)Point Size:01 (Inter	Letterhead:		d				
Heavy Envelope:Heavy EnvelopePreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalBond:HeavyBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalBough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Tough Paper:Print SettingsAuto Continue:OffCopies:1Courier Font:RegularOrientation:P (Portrat)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoPint Size:23Pint Size:10.00Point Size:01 (Internal)Point Size:01 (Inter	Envelope:	Envelo	pe				
Preprinted:NormalPreprinted:NormalOriored:NormalGolored:NormalBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalRough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHeavy Rough:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Tough Paper:Print SettingsAuto Continue:OffCopies:1Courier Font:RegularOrientation:Portral /Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/0):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoJam Recovery:10.00Joint Size:10.00Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form Source:Sol LinesAppend Ck to LF:NoMono print (color out):NoMono print (color out):NoMono print (color out):Sol LinesAppend Ck to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:Color Enabled:NoTure:Print PS Errors:Sol LinesAppend Ck to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:Sol MidonePower Save Time:I S Minut#Print PS Errors:Sol DistPower Save Time:Sol DistPower Save Time:Sol DistNoSol DistHord Save Time:Sol DistNoSol DistHord Save Time:Sol DistNoSol DistHord Save Time:Sol DistNo <t< th=""><th></th><th></th><th>-</th><th></th><th></th><th></th></t<>			-				
Prepunched:NormalColored:NormalBond:HeavyRecycled:NormalRough:HeavyHeavy Rough:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Card stockHP Tough Paper:Tough Paper:OffOffCopies:1Copies:RegularOrientation:P (Portrat)Vide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoIon Surce:I (Internal)Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoNon oprint (color out):NoNon oprint (color out):NoLow Threshold:SRestrict Color:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:15 MinutesIon Threshold:0NoISPrint Destript:15 MinutesMono print (color out):10 MinutesIon Timeshold:0NoIS MinutesPrint Destript:10 MinutesPrint Destript:10 MinutesNoIS MinutesNoI							
Colored: Normal Bond: Heavy Recycled: Normal Rough: Heavy Recycled: Normal Rough: Carid stock Heavy Rough: Carid stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings 1 Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P(Portrat) Vide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: 1 (Interna) Font Source: 1 (Interna) Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 0 10.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Append CR to LF: No Supply out override enabled: No Print Pserors: Off Mono print (color out): No No Image: Print Densidu: 6 Restriet Color: Calor Enabled: Print Densidu: 6 Restriet Color: Calor Enabled:							
Bond: Heavy Recycled: Normal Rough: Heavy Rough: Calibration Rough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings Off Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P (Portral) Vide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Jam Recovery: Auto Print Number: 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Print Number: 0.00 Symbol Set: 120 Seconds Print Number: 0.00 Symbol Set: 120 Seconds Append CR to LF: No Form: 00Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Low Threshold: No Print Destrife Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: Simulation: K Restrift Color: Color Enabled No Print Density							
Recycled: Normal Rough: Heavy Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Card stock Print Settings Iteration Print Settings Iteration Auto Continue: Off Iteration Copies: 1 Iteration Copier Font: Regular Iteration Orientation: P (Portrat) Iteration Vide A4: No Iteration Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Iteration Jam Recovery: Auto Iteration Iteration Font Source: (Internal) Font Source: Symbol Set: Pice Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: Source Source Symbol Set: Off Supply out override enabled: No Mono print (color out): No Iteration Iteration Print Density Print Density Formition Y K Contrasts: O O O O O O O O O O O O O O							
Reavy Heavy Rough: Heavy Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper:Print SettingsAuto Continue:OffCopies:1Courier Font:RegularOrientation:P (Potrai)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoJam Recovery:AutoJam Recovery:AutoSymbol Set:PC-8Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoSupply out override enabled:NoMono print (color out):NoLow Threshold:60Low Threshold:60PowerSave Time:15 MinutesPrint DensityYKKContrasts:0O0Midtones:0O0O0							
Heavy Rough: Card stock HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings I Auto Continue: Off Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P(Portrat) Wide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 10 20 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: I (Internal) Font Source: I (Internal) Font Number: 23 Phint Sec: 10.00 Point Size: 80 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: 60 files Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Color Enabled: Restrict Color: Color Enabled: Power Save Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Midones: 0 0 0							
HP Tough Paper: Tough Paper Print Settings Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P (Portrat) Wide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Jam Recovery: Auto Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 80 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: Sol Low Threshold: Sol Point Size: Solor Enabled Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Point Size: Solor Enabled Point Size: Solor Enabled Print PS Errors: Off Restrict Color: Color Enabled Power Save Time: It Stimutes Print Density K		•					
Print Settings Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P (Portrat) Wide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: I (Internal) Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled: No How Threshold: 6 Restriet Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Midtones: 0 0 0 0 0							
Auto Continue: Off Copies: 1 Courier Font: Regular Orientation: P (Portrait) Wide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: I (Internal) Font Source: I (Internal) Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled Power Save Time: 15 Minutes Print Density	nr rough rapei.	rougn	гары				
Copies:1Courier Font:RegularOrientation:P(Portrait)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoFont Source:I (Internal)Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:21.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:OffMono print (color out):NoLow Threshold:6Restrict Color:Color EnabledPower Save Time:15 MinutesPrint DensityYKKContrasts:0Midtones:0Midtones:0O0Midtones:0							
Courier Font:RegularOrientation:P (Portrait)Wide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoFont Source:I (Internal)Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:OffSupply out override enabled:NoLow Threshold:6Restrict Color:Color EnabledPower Save Time:15 MinutesPrint DensityCMYKContrasts:00000Midones:00							
Orientation:PPWide A4:NoConnection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoFont Source:I (Internal)Font Source:I (Internal)Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:Co.8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:OffSupply out override enabled:NoLow Threshold:6Restrict Color:Color EnabledPower Save Time:15 MinutesPrint DensityKContrasts:00000Highlights:0000Midtones:00000							
Wide A4: No Connection Timeout (I/O): 120 Seconds Jam Recovery: Auto Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: 1(Interna) Font Source: 1(Interna) Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled Power Save Time: 15 Minutes Formet Y Formet Save Time: Print Density		_					
Connection Timeout (I/O):120 SecondsJam Recovery:AutoJam Recovery:AutoJam Recovery:Colspan="4">AutoJam Recovery:Colspan="4">AutoFont Number:23Font Number:23Pitch:10.00Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:OffSupply out override enabled:NoLow Threshold:6Restrict Color:Color EnabledPrint DensityYKKContrasts:00Midtones:00Midtones:0			arait)				
Jam Recovery: Auto Font Source: I (Internal) Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Mono print (color out): No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled Power Save Time: 15 Minutes							
Font Source: 1 (Internal) Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled Power Save Time: 15 Minutes Print Density			econds				
Font Number: 23 Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 80 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 Midones: 0 0							
Pitch: 10.00 Point Size: 12.00 Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append Clt oLF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled: No No No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Frint Density K Minutes: 0 Midones: 0 0 No 0 0			nal)				
Point Size:12.00Symbol Set:PC-8Form:60 LinesForm:60 LinesAppend CR to LF:NoPrint PS Errors:OffSupply out override enabled:NoLow Threshold:OColor EnabledPowerSave Time:Supply out override enabled:NoLow Threshold:Sastrict Color:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:Sastrict Color:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:Sastrict Color:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:Sastrict Color:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:KColor EnabledPowerSave Time:Color EnabledPowerSave Time:Color MYKContrasts:00OOPowerSave Time:Color MYKContrasts:OOOOOO <th colspa<="" th=""><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th><th></th></th>	<th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>						
Symbol Set: PC-8 Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled: No Bono print (color out): No Low Threshold: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: Color Enabled Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Pitch:	10.00					
Form: 60 Lines Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Mono print (color out): No Low Threshold: 6 Power Save Time: 15 Minutes Print Density C M K C M K C M Y Frint Density C M K O 0 Highlights: O 0 Minutes	Point Size:	12.00					
Append CR to LF: No Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Supply out override enabled.: No Low Threshold: O Low Threshold: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: Color Enabled Print Density K Contrasts: O O O Highlights: O O O Midtones: O O O	Symbol Set:	PC-8					
Print PS Errors: Off Supply out override enabled.: No Supply out override enabled.: No Mono print (color out): O Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Form:	60 Line	es				
Supply out override enabled: No Mono print (color out): No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Append CR to LF:	No					
Nono print (color out): No Low Threshold: 6 Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Print PS Errors:	Off					
Color Enabled K PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Supply out override enabled.:	No					
Restrict Color: Color Enabled PowerSave Time: 15 Minutes Print Density K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Mono print (color out):	No					
PowerSave Time:15 MinutesPrint DensityYKContrasts:000Highlights:000Midtones:000	Low Threshold:	6					
Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	Restrict Color:	Color E	Enabled				
C M Y K Contrasts: 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0	PowerSave Time:	15 Min	utes				
Contrasts: 0 0 0 0 Highlights: 0 0 0 0 0 Midtones: 0 0 0 0 0 0	Print Density						
Highlights:000Midtones:000		с	м	Y	к		
Highlights:000Midtones:000	Contrasts:						
Midtones: 0 0 0 0							
		-	-		-		
		0	0	0	0		

Network Summary

The **Network Summary** screen shows the values for all of the network settings that are available for the product. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page that the firmware generates.

MP Color LaserJo	et CP2025dn	
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.1	0	
Status Settings	Networking	
Device Status	Naturals Commences	
Supplies Status	Network Summary	Shop for Supplies Support
Device Configuration	ТСРЛР(v4)	
Network Summary	Status:	Ready
Print Info Pages		·····,
Color Usage Job Log	IPv4 Address:	192.168.0.10
Event Log	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0
	Default Gateway: IP Configured By:	192.168.0.1 DHCP
	DHCP/BOOTP Server:	192.68.0.201
	DHCP Expiration Time:	01:19:15 (Days:Hours:Minutes)
	WINS Server:	192.68.0.200
	ТСРЛР(уб)	
	Status:	Ready
	Link-Local Address:	FE80::21A:4BFF:FE27:2CC4
	Stateless (from Router):	Not Configured
	Stateful (from DHCPv6):	Not Configured
	Network Identification	
	Host Name:	NPI272CC4
	Domain Name (IPv4/IPv6):	anyone@yourdomain.com
	Domain Name (IPv6 only):	
	Bonjour Service Name:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn (272CC4)
	Bonjour Domain Name:	NPI272CC4.local.
	Network Hardware Configuration	
	Hardware Address:	x000000000x
	Firmware Datecode:	20080220
	Link Speed and Duplex Negotiation:	Automatic
	Link Speed:	100 Mbps
	Duplex: Automatic Crossover:	Full Enabled
	Connection Timeout (I/O):	Enabled 120 Seconds
	WS-Print Users:	0
	SNMP	
	Status:	Read-Write Access Enabled
	SNMP Version:	v1
	Set Community Name:	Not Specified (Defaults to 'public')
	Get Community Name:	Not Specified (Defaults to 'public')
	Network Statistics	
		2400465
	Total Packets Received: Unicast Packets Received:	2109165 58777
	Bad Packets Received:	0
	Framing Errors Received:	0
	Total Packets Transmitted:	103812
	Unsendable Packets:	0
	Transmit Collisions:	0

Figure 2-47 HP EWS Network Summary screen – Status tab (2 of 2)

Enabled Features	
IPv4:	Enabled
IPv6:	Enabled
DHCPv6:	Enabled
LPD Printing:	Enabled
Bonjour:	Enabled
SLP:	Enabled
WS-Discovery:	Enabled
SNMP:	Enabled
Show IPv4 Address on Control Panel:	Disabled

Print Info Pages

Use the **Print Info Pages** screen to print the internal special pages that the product generates. The content of these reports is generated by the product firmware. Click **Print** next to the name of the page to be printed.

Figure 2-48 HP EWS Print Info Pages screen

쳵 HP Col	or LaserJe	et CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP202	5dn 192.168.0.1	0	
Status	Settings	Networking	
Device Status Supplies Status		Print Information Pages	Shop for Supplies Support
Device Configuration Network Summary		Print PCL Font List	Print
Print Info Pages		Print PCL6 Font List	Print
Color Usage Job Log Event Log		Print PS Font List	Print
		Print Supplies Page	Print

Color Usage Job Log

Use the Color Usage Job Log screen to complete the following tasks:

- Find the printer's serial number, which is listed under the **Product Information** subheading.
- Check the number of print jobs stored, which is listed under the **Usage Totals** subheading. The log also includes information about how much color the printer has used.
- Delete the currently stored Color Usage Job Log information by selecting the **Clear Job Log** option.

Figure 2-49 HP EWS Color Usage Job Log screen

🍈 HP Color La	aserJet CP2025dn					
P Color LaserJet CP2025dn 19	2.168.0.10					
Status Set	tings Networking					
Device Status Supplies Status	Color Usage J	ob Log		Shoj	o for Supplies	Support
Device Configuration	Product Information					
Network Summary	Product Name:		HP Color LaserJet CP2025	ale.		
Print Info Pages	Product Name: Product Serial Numb		OXXXXXXXXXXX	un		
Color Usage Job Log						
vent Log	Usage Totals					
	Total Jobs in Log:		1			
	Total Mono Sides:		I			
	Total Color Sides:		3			
	Total Sides:		1			
	Job Log					
	Date/Time U	Jser Job	Application	Mono Sides	Color Sides	Total Sheets
				0	1	1
			Internal Report	0	1	1
	20080320 19:48 s	shelleyr hpbtpg.tpg	HP Driver test page	0	1	1
			Internal Report	1	0	1
	Clear Job Log	To delete the Cold Job Log button.	r Usage Job Log informati	on currently store	d on the device,	press the Clear

Event Log

Use the **Event Log** screen to monitor events for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. Up to 10 events can appear on this screen. If this screen is empty, no events have occurred on the printer.

Figure 2-50	HP EWS Event Log screen
-------------	-------------------------

(ир) НР С		et CP2025dn	8	
Color LaserJet CP2	2025dn 192.168.0.1	10		
Status	Settings	Networking		
Device Status Supplies Status		Event Log		Shop for Supplies Support
Device Configuration	n	Number	Code	Page
Network Summary Print Info Pages		10	13.0000	936
Color Usage Job Lo	a	9	13.0000	895
Event Log	2	8	55.3000	878
-		7	20.0000	821
		6	13.0000	450
		5	13.0000	448
		4	13.0000	447
		3	13.0000	444
		2	13.0000	441
		1	13.0000	435

Settings tab

Use the **Settings** tab to view and change settings for the following features:

- Device Information
- Paper Handling
- Printing
- <u>PCL5c</u>
- PostScript
- Print Quality
- Print Density
- Paper Types
- Extended Print Modes
- System Setup
- <u>Service</u>
- Password

Device Information

The **Device Information** screen contains identifying information about the printer.

- **Device Description**. This field shows the version of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer that is installed.
- Asset Number. Use this field to assign an identifying asset control number to the printer.
- Company Name.
- Contact Person.

Figure 2-51 HP EWS Device Information screen

6 HP Color LaserJ	et CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.	10	
Status Settings	Networking	
Device Information Paper Handling	Device Information	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing	Device Description:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
PCL5c		AP Color LaserJet CP2025dil
PostScript	Asset Number:	
Print Quality	Company Name:	
Print Density	Contact Person:	
Paper Types		
Extended Print Modes		
System Setup		Apply Cancel
Service		
Password		

Paper Handling

Use this screen to configure the paper-handling defaults for the printer. Change the default settings by clicking the blue arrow next to each option and highlighting the selection. Click **Apply** to save the new settings.

	et CP2025dn		1
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.			
Status Settings	Networking		
Device Information	Paper Handling		
Paper Handling	Faper Handling	Shop for Supplies Sup	oport
Printing	Paper Handling		
PCL5c	Default Paper Size:	Letter	
PostScript			
Print Quality	Default Paper Type:	Plain 💌	
Print Density	Manual Feed:	Off 💌	
Paper Types	Duplex:	Off 💌	
Extended Print Modes	Bind:	Long Edge	
System Setup Service	Tray 1 Size:	Any size 💙	
Password	Тгау 1 Туре:	Any Type	
assword	Tray 2 Size:	Any size 🗸	
	Тгау 2 Туре:	Апу Туре	
	Paper Out Handling		
	Wait For Paper To Be Loaded		
	Specify Time and Action		
	Paper Out Time:	0 Seconds (0 - 3600)	
	Paper Out Action:	Cancel	

The following options are available.

• Default paper size. This drop-down menu lists all of the supported paper sizes.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, use the driver to set paper size only when printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

NOTE: Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the printer, a control-panel message prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

• **Default paper type**. This drop-down menu shows a selection of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the printer uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**. For more information about paper types, see <u>Paper type: on page 192</u>.

- **Duplex**. The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:
 - HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
 - HP Color LaserJet CP2025x

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to Unspecified, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

For more information about the duplex feature, see Finishing tab features on page 206.

Bind. Binding occurs along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. Short-side binding is
for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding
is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

For more information about binding, seeFinishing tab features on page 206.

• **Tray size and type**. Network administrators can use this feature to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tab set. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the printer with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed on this screen include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Printing

Use the **Printing** screen to change the printing defaults for the printer.

Figure 2-53	HP EWS	Printing scree	en
🍈 НР Со	lor LaserJe	t CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP202	25dn 192.168.0.10	1	
Status	Settings	Networking	
Device Information Paper Handling		Printing	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing PCL5c PostScript Print Quality Print Density Paper Types		Copies: Wide A4: Courier Font: Orientation:	1 (1 - 999) No V Regular V P (Portrait) V
Extended Print Modes System Setup Service Password			Apply Cancel

• **Copies**. This setting specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The requested number of copies appears in the **Copies** option. Select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows on the right side of the text box. For the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used.

Invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than 9999) change to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Problems can develop when a software program and the driver it is running on both allow the user to set the number of copies to print. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) appears in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver might result in the printer making 100 copies (10 x 10). Set the number of copies in the software program, whenever possible.

- **Orientation**. Use this feature to choose the direction of the print job.
 - **Portrait**. The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper. This is the default setting.
 - **Landscape**. The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

PCL5c

Use the PCL5c screen to change font information and form length.

igure 2-54	HP EWS	PCL5c screen	
🍈 HP Col	or LaserJ	et CP2025dn	
IP Color LaserJet CP202	5dn 192.168.0.1	10	
Status	Settings	Networking	
Device Information Paper Handling		PCL5c	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing		Font Number:	23 (0 - 84)
PCL5c			
PostScript		Font Pitch:	10.00 (0.44 - 99.99)
Print Quality		Font Point Size:	12.00 (4.00 - 999.75)
Print Density		Symbol Set:	PC-8
Paper Types		Append CR to LF:	No 🗸
Extended Print Modes		Form Length:	60 (5 - 128)
System Setup			
Service			
Password			Apply Cancel

PostScript

Use the PostScript screen to turn postscript error printing on or off.

Figure 2-55 HP EWS PostScript screen	
1 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.10	
Ctatus Cattings Naturaling	

Status Settings	Networking		
Device Information Paper Handling	PostScript		Shop for Supplies Support
Printing	D : (DO 5	0//	
PCL5c	Print PS Errors:	Off 💌	
PostScript			
Print Quality			Apply Cancel
Print Density			
Paper Types			
Extended Print Modes			
System Setup			
Service			
Password			

The **Print PostScript errors** setting specifies whether a PS error-handler message is sent. To get the printer to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **On**.

Print Quality

Use the **Print Quality** screen to change when and how often the printer calibrates. You can also use the **Calibrate Now** button on this screen to cause the printer to calibrate.

Figure 2-56 HP EWS Print Quality screen

1 HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn							
HP Color LaserJet CP202	5dn 192.168.0.1	10					
Status	Settings	Networking					
Device Information Paper Handling		Print Quality	Shop for Supplies Support				
Printing		Color Calibration					
PCL5c PostScript		Power-On Calibration:	15 Minutes 💌				
Print Quality		Calibration Timing:	48 Hours 🔽				
Print Density		Calibrate Now:					
Paper Types							
Extended Print Modes			Apply Cancel				
System Setup			Apply Cancel				
Service							
Password							

Print Density

Use the settings on the **Print Density** screen to adjust the amount toner the printer uses for images, pages, and documents.

P Color Lase	erJet CP2025dn			
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.16				
Status Settings	s Networking			
Device Information	Print Density		Shop for Supplies	Support
Paper Handling				Joupport
Printing PCL5c	Contrasts			
ostScript	Cyan Density:	0 💌		
Print Quality	Magenta Density:	0 💌		
Print Density	Yellow Density:	0 💌		
Paper Types	Black Density:	0 💌		
Extended Print Modes	Highlights			
System Setup Service	ingingito			
assword	Cyan Density:	0 🕶		
	Magenta Density:	0 🗸		
	Yellow Density:	0 🕶		
	Black Density:	0 💙		
	Midtones			
	Cyan Density:	0 💙		
	Magenta Density:	0 💌		
	Yellow Density:	0 💌		
	Black Density:	0 💌		
	Shadows			
	Cyan Density:	0 🗸		
	Magenta Density:	0 🖌		
	Yellow Density:	0 💌		
	Black Density:	0 💌		
	Restore Defaults			
	Restore Defaults:			
			Apply	Cancel

Figure 2-57 HP EWS Print Density screen

Paper Types

Use the **Paper Types** screen to map the print modes that the printer will use for each paper type.

For more information about Paper Types settings, see Paper type: on page 192.

Figure 2-58 HP EWS Paper Types screen

P Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.1	68.0.10	
Status Setting		
Device Information Paper Handling	Paper Types	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing PCL5c	Plain:	Normal
PostScript	Letterhead:	Normal
Print Quality	Preprinted:	Normal
Print Density	Prepunched:	Normal
Paper Types	Colored:	Normal
Extended Print Modes	Bond:	Heavy
System Setup	Recycled:	Normal
Service Password	Rough:	Heavy
Password	Heavy Rough:	Card stock
	Restore Modes:	

Extended Print Modes

Use the **Extended Print Modes** screen to adjust the printing process to optimize print quality for various paper types and sizes.

For more information about Extended Print Mode settings, see <u>Extended Print Modes screen</u> on page 69.

Figure 2-59	HP EWS Extended Print Modes screen	(1	of 2)
-------------	------------------------------------	----	------	---

HP Color Laser.	567 2025un			0		0	an un	
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0	0.10							
Status Settings	Networking							
evice Information aper Handling	Extended Print	Modes			Shop for	Supplie	s Sup	port
rinting CL5c	Media Type	Fusing	Transfer		Duplex Transfei	r 1	Toner	
rostScript rint Quality	Plain:	No Adjustment	🗙 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
rrint Density 'aper Types	HP Matte 90g:	No Adjustment	🗙 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
ixtended Print Modes System Setup	HP Matte 105g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
ervice lassword	HP Matte 120g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	HP Matte 160g:	No Adjustment	Vo Adjustm		No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	
	HP Matte 200g:	More Fusing (+1)	No Adjustm		No Adjustment	¥	No Adjustment	
	HP Glossy 130g: HP Glossy 160g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm		No Adjustment	×	No Adjustment	
	HP Tri Glossy 160g.	No Adjustment	No Adjustm		No Adjustment	~	No Adjustment	
	HP Glossy 220g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm		No Adjustment	~	No Adjustment	
	Light 60-74g:	No Adjustment	💉 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Mid-Weight 96-110g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Heavy 111-130g:	No Adjustment	🗙 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Extra Heavy 131-175g:	No Adjustment	🗙 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Heavy Glossy111- 130g:	No Adjustment	💉 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	X-HvyGlossy 131- 175g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Card Glossy 176-220g:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Transparency:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Labels:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Letterhead:	No Adjustment	💙 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Envelope:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Heavy Envelope:	No Adjustment	💌 No Adjustm	ent 💌	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
	Preprinted:	No Adjustment	Vo Adjustmi		No Adjustment		No Adjustment	
	Prepunched:	No Adjustment	No Adjustm		No Adjustment	~	No Adjustment	
	Colored:	No Adjustment	📉 No Adjustm	ent 💙	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*

Figure 2-60 HP EWS Extended Print Modes screen (2 of 2)

			(-					
Bond:	No Adjustment	٧	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	٧	No Adjustment	~
Recycled:	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
Rough:	No Adjustment	*	Rough Paper	*	Rough Paper	¥	No Adjustment	*
Heavy Rough:	No Adjustment	*	Rough Paper	*	Rough Paper	*	No Adjustment	*
HP Tough Paper:	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*	No Adjustment	*
Restore Modes:								
Optimize								
Background Toner:		Off	*					
Background Toner 2	:	Off	*					
Extra Drum Cleaning:		Off 💌						
Drum Banding:		Off 💌						
Registration:		Off 💌						
Tray 1:		Off	*					
Re-Transfer:		Off	*					
Jam Reduction:		Off	*					
Heavy Media Optimiz	ation:	Off	*					
Transfer Belt Cleanir	ng:	No A	djustment 🔽					
Transfer Belt Cleanir	ng Voltage:	No A	djustment 🔽					
Transfer Belt Voltage	e - Y:	No A	djustment 🔽					
Transfer Belt Voltage - M:		No Adjustment						
Transfer Belt Voltage - C:		No Adjustment						
Transfer Belt Voltage	e - K:	No A	djustment 💉					
Transfer Belt Voltage	e - K:	No A	djustment 👻		Appl	1	Cance	I
					- Abbi		Calibo	

For more information regarding the Optimize menu options, see <u>Table 2-8 Optimize modes</u> on page 71.

System Setup

Use the System Setup screen to change settings on the printer such as Jam Recovery and Auto Continue.

(b) HP Color LaserJet	: CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.10		
Status Settings	Networking	
Device Information Paper Handling	System Setup	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing PCL5c	Jam Recovery:	Auto 💌
PostScript	Auto Continue:	Off 💌
Print Quality	Connection Timeout (I/O):	120 Seconds (5 - 7200)
Print Density	Cartridge Low Threshold:	6 % (1 - 20)
Paper Types	Language:	
Extended Print Modes	Warning: After you select a new	
System Setup	language and click Apply, your product will turn off and then turn on. Once your	English 🔽
Service	device is ready, you will need to refresh	
Password	this page to view your changes.	Apply Cancel

Service

Use the Service screen to start the cleaning mode procedure on the printer. Follow the instructions on the product control panel to complete the cleaning procedure.

Figure 2-62 HP EWS Service screen						
🍈 HP Col	or LaserJe	CP2025dn				
HP Color LaserJet CP202	5dn 192.168.0.10					
Status	Settings	Networking				
Device Information Paper Handling Printing		Service Cleaning Mode	Shop for Supplies Support			
PCL5c PostScript Print Quality		Begin Cleaning Mode Start (Note: The cleaning mode could take any	where from 1 to 3 minutes. The device will slowly move one page through the			
Print Density Paper Types		paper path. Please be patient.)				
Extended Print Modes System Setup						
Service Password						

Password

Use this screen to set or change the Administrator password.

NOTE: Setting a password on this screen also sets the password for HP ToolboxFX.

Figure 2-63	HP EWS I	Password screen	۱
🍈 НР Со	lor LaserJe	t CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP202	25dn 192.168.0.10	I	
Status	Settings	Networking	
Device Information Paper Handling		Password	Shop for Supplies Support
Printing PCL5c			nge the Administrator Password. When set, the Administrator Password is required before configuration parameters. To disable the Administrator Password, leave the entries blank.
PostScript Print Quality Print Density		NOTE: When logging in, any u	sername can be typed in the username field in the login dialog box.
Paper Types Extended Print Modes		Password: Confirm Password:	
System Setup			
Service			Apply Cancel
Password			

Networking tab

Use the **Networking** tab to view and change settings for the network connection and communication with the printer. The following screens are available:

- Network Summary
- IPv4 Configuration
- IPv6 Configuration
- Network Identification
- Advanced
- <u>SNMP</u>

Network Summary

The **Network Summary** screen that appears on the Networking tab is the same screen that appears on the Status tab. See the<u>Network Summary on page 91</u> in the Status tab section for more information about this screen.

IPv4 Configuration

Use the IPv4 Configuration screen to modify settings for basic TCP/IPv4 Network configuration.

If **Automatic IP** is configured, the **Manual IP** Address configuration settings are disabled, but the values for these settings are still displayed if they have been set.

If the configuration is switched from **Automatic IP** to **Manual IP**, the IP Address fields are cleared, and the desired IP Address must be entered before continuing.

Click **Apply** to keep changes. When **Apply** is clicked, a confirmation dialog asks for confirmation. Click **Yes** to continue.

MP Color Lase	rJet CP2025dn		
Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168 Status Settings	3.0.10 Networking		
status settings	Networking		
etwork Summary V4 Configuration	IPv4 Configuration		Shop for Supplies Support
v6 Configuration letwork Identification .dvanced	Warning: A change in t browser.	he IP Address will resu	Ilt in loss of connectivity to the
NMP	📀 IPv4 Enabled		
	IP Configured By:	DHCP	
	Host Name: Domain Name:	NPI272CC4 anyone@yourdomain.com	Set by: Default Set by: DHCP
	 Automatic IP 	🔘 Manual IP	
	DHCP		
	BOOTP		
	AUTOIP		
	IP Address:	192 168 0	. 10
	Subnet Mask:	255.255.255.0	×
	Default Gateway:	192 68 0	. 1
	WINS Server:	192 68 0	. 201

IPv6 Configuration

The **IPv6 Configuration** screen shows the status of the IPv6 Network configuration settings. This screen is read-only and no settings can be modified here.

Up to seven IPv6 addresses can be shown on this screen, depending upon the automatic configuration of the networking firmware. All available IPv6 addresses are shown.

MP Color LaserJe	et CP2025dn				
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.10	0				
Status Settings	Networking				
Network Summary IPv4 Configuration	IPv6 Config	uration		Shop for Supp	lies Support
IPv6 Configuration Network Identification	📀 IPv6 Enable	d			
Advanced SNMP	Host Name: Domain Name:	NPI272 ≺Not Si		Set by: Default	
	IPv6 Addresses				
	Link-Local Fl	ddress 580::21A:4BFF:FE27:2CC4 days:hours:minutes	Prefix Length 64	Preferred Lifetime*	Valid Lifetime*

Figure 2-65 HP EWS IPv6 Configuration screen

Network Identification

Use the **Network Identification** screen to configure the host name and domain name(s) used to identify the product on the network.

The values for host name and domain names are retrieved from the firmware and displayed on this screen. The networking firmware determines what host name and domain name(s) to use and cannot be modified.

The text entries are disabled under certain circumstances. The following table defines when the entities are disabled.

Table 2-13 Ne	etwork Identification screen	- Text entries
---------------	------------------------------	----------------

Text entry	Disabled status
Host name	Disabled if configured by BOOTP
Domain name (IPv4/IPv6)	Disabled if configured by BOOTP, DHCPv4, or DHCPv6

Table 2-13 Network Identification screen – Text entries (continued)

Text entry

Domain name (IPv6)

Bonjour Service name

Disabled if configured by DHCPv6 Disabled if Bonjour is disabled

Disabled status

Figure 2-66 HP EWS	Network Identificatio	n screen			
(b) HP Color LaserJet	t CP2025dn				
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.10					
Status Settings	Networking				
Network Summary IPv4 Configuration	Network Identification		Shop for Supplies	Support	
IPv6 Configuration Network Identification Advanced	Warning: Changes to thes the device.	e settings may resul	t in loss of connectivity	/ with	
SNMP	Host Name:	NPI272CC4	Set by: Default		
	Domain Name (IPv4/IPv6):	anyone@yourdomain.com	Set by: DHCP		
	Domain Name (IPv6 only):		Set by: Default		
	Bonjour Service Name:	HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn	(272CC4)		
	Bonjour Domain Name:	NPI272CC4.local.			
	 Use BOOTP, manual, or default supplied host name. Use DHCPv4 supplied host name. Use DHCPv6 supplied host name. 				
	Available Host Names/Domain Nam	es (Information only)			
	Default Host Name: BOOTP/DHCPv4 Supplied Host Nam BOOTP/DHCPv4 Supplied Domain N DHCPv6 Supplied Host Name: DHCPv6 Supplied Domain Name:		tain.com		
	Restore all host and domain name settings to their factory default values.				
			Apply	Cancel	

Advanced

Use the **Advanced** screen to configure the enabled settings and other settings, such as link speed, for the printer.

Figure 2-67 HP EWS Advanced screen

🧑 HP Color Laser.	let CP2025dn	
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0	.10	
Status Settings	Networking	
Network Summary IPv4 Configuration	Advanced	Shop for Supplies Support
IPv6 Configuration	Warning: Changes to these	e settings may result in loss of connectivity with
Network Identification	the device.	
SNMP	Enabled Features SLP LPD Printing Show IPv4 Address on Control Panel	 ✓ IPv4 ✓ IPv6 ✓ Bonjour ✓ WS-Discovery ✓ DHCPv6
	Other Settings	actory default values. Apply Cancel

Table 2-14 Advanced Network Settings options and settings

Option	Settings
Enabled Features	HP SLP Discovery (enabled by default)
	LPD Printing (enabled by default)
	Show IPv4 address on conrol panel
	• IPv4
	 IPv6
	Bonjour
	WS-Discovery
	DHCPv6
Other Settings	Restore all network settings to their factory default values.

NOTE: Click Apply to make the changes take effect.

SNMP

Use this screen to configure the SNMP networking settings for the printer.

Figure 2-68 HP EWS	SNMP screen		
MP Color LaserJe	t CP2025dn		
HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn 192.168.0.10			
Status Settings	Networking		
Network Summary IPv4 Configuration	SNMP	Shop for Supplies Support	
IPv6 Configuration Network Identification Advanced	Caution: Changing th functionality.	ese settings can potentially disrupt network	
SNMP	 Enable SNMP read-write access. Enable SNMP read-only access (uses 'public' for the Get Community Name). Disable SNMP 		
	Set Community Name: Confirm Set Community Name: Get Community Name: Confirm Get Community Name:	Replaces 'public'	
		Apply Cancel	

The following options are available on the **SNMP** screen:

Options	Description		
Enable SNMP v1 read-write access	Select this option to enable SNMP v1 agents on the printer. Custom community names can be configured to control management access to the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. These community name settings appear on the lower half of the screen.		
	Set Community name:	Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.	
	Confirm Set Community name:	Retype the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.	
	Get Community name:	Type the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the printer.	
	ui.element>Confirm Get Community name:	Retype the SNMP Get Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be read from the printer.	
	Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of "public"	Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". After selecting this option, type the values in the Get Community name and Confirm Get Community name fields.	

Enable SNMP v1 read-only access (uses "public" for the Get Community value)	Select this option to enable the SNMP v1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet Cl Series printer, but limit access to read-only. Write-access is disabled. The de Get Community name "public" is automatically enabled.		
	Set Community name:	Type the SNMP Set Community Name (password) to allow SNMP information to be configured (or written) on the printer.	
	Configure Get Community name:		
	Disable SNMP v1 default Get Community name of "public":	Select this option to disable the default Get community name "public". After selecting this option, type the values in the Get Community name and Confirm Get Community name fields.	
Disable SNMP v1	Select this option to disable the SNMP v1 agents on the HP Color LaserJet CP202 Series printer, which is recommended for secure environments. If SNMP v1 is disabled, some port monitors or discovery utilities might not operate properly.		
Apply	Click Apply to make the changes take effect.		

HP Customer Participation Program

The HP Customer Participation Program is HP's voluntary program for communication between the computer and HP to help HP monitor toner usage. HP Customer Participation Program is installed automatically by selecting the **Recommended Install** method of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software installation.

About two weeks after installation, an option appears on the computer screen allowing users to accept participation in the program. The message contains full disclosure of the information that is communicated. Participation is entirely voluntary, and the impact on processing and connecting speed is negligible. Personal information is never sent without permission. TCP/IP addresses are used only to enable the connection and for security purposes.

This option cannot be uninstalled separately using Add/Remove Programs.

Optional software

The following options are available on the **Install More Software** window on the CD browser after the printing-system software is installed.

Universal Print Driver

Click the **Universal Print Driver** option to go to the following HP Web site to download the universal print driver.

www.hp.com/go/upd

Go to the following web site to download a Universal Print Driver specific to your product.

www.hp.com/support/ljcp2020series

Basic Color Match

HP Basic Color Match software allows you to adjust spot color in your printed output. For example, you can match the color of your company logo on your printed output. You can save and use the new color schemes for specific documents or all printed documents, or you can create multiple color schemes that you can choose from later.

Click the **Basic Color Match** option to go to the following HP Web site to download the HP Basic Color Match software.

www.hp.com/go/basiccolormatch

HP Easy Printer Care

With HP Easy Printer Care software, you can manage and monitor up to 15 printers from your desktop. HP Easy Printer Care software allows you to view the printer status, create printer usage reports, reorder supplies, and troubleshoot and repair printers via HP Proactive Support.

NOTE: The HP Easy Printer Care Software will be available for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer in early 2009.

Click theHP Easy Printer Care option to go to the HP Easy Printer Care free software download page.

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

HP Smart Web Printing

Click the **HP Smart Web Printing** option to go to the HP Smart Web Printing free download page.

www.hp.com/go/smartwebprinting

HP Smart Web Printing software enhances the browsing experience by fixing problems that are encountered when printing Web pages.

Supported operating systems

- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Vista

Requirements

- Internet Explorer 6.0 and higher
- 16 MB of hard disk space
- 800 x 600 monitor with 16-bit or higher color depth

Features

- Automatically scales output to fix right-edge clipping and eliminate wasteful prints containing clipped pages or a few lines of useless text
- Provides a preview with automatic fixes and more control over printed output
- Allows users to select text and graphics easily from any Web site and save a handy list of clips
- Provides a Clip Book pane that can be hidden (similar to IE Favorites, Search, and History panes)
- Provides a Print Clip window to compose and modify clips before printing

Font support

The following sections list the fonts that are included with Microsoft Windows software, and the fonts that are available on the CD that came with the product.

Basic fonts

Microsoft Windows software includes these basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing product:

- Arial
- Courier New Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New Bold
- Times New Roman Bold
- Arial Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Arial Bold Italic
- Symbol
- Wingdings
- Courier New
- Times New Roman

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through an installation of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software.

Table 2-15	Default fonts
	Donautionito

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF

Table 2-15 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica®	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANCTTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGSTTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF

Table 2-15 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMPSTTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF

Ninety-two additional postscript emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 2-16 Additional postscript emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF

Bold Italic

Table 2-16 Additional postscript emulation fonts (continued)

Goudy

PS_10695.TTF

Table 2-16 Additional postscript emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF

Table 2-16 Additional postscript emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF

3 Install Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems support the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, and software is available on the Web. This document provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software for MS Windows operating systems.

- Supported operating systems for Windows
- Installation overview
- Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions
- Install optional software
- User uninstall software

Supported operating systems for Windows

The product uses the HP PCL 6 driver and the HP PostScript (PS) Universal Print Driver.

Supported Windows operating systems	Recommended install	Express install	Add printer ¹
Windows XP, 32-bit	Х	х	х
Windows XP, 64-bit		Х	X ²
Windows Vista, 32-bit	Х	Х	Х
Windows Vista, 64-bit	Х	Х	X ²
Windows 2000		Х	Х
Windows Server 2003, 32-bit		Х	Х
Windows Server 2003, 64-bit	Not supported		

Table 3-1 Supported operating systems for Windows

¹ Express Installs are recommended instead of installing using the Microsoft Add-Printer Wizard.

² The 64-bit HP PCL6 driver can be found on the root of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer does not support Microsoft Windows NT 4.0, Windows 98, and Windows Me operating systems. When attempting to install the software in these environments, an **Unsupported Operating System** dialog box appears and the installation is cancelled.

Windows operating system requirements

System requirements for 32-bit operating systems

- Pentium or compatible processor
- Windows Vista: 800 MHz processor with 512 MB RAM, 15 GB available hard drive space
- Microsoft Windows XP: 333 MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003: 550 MHz processor with 128 MB RAM (Standard Edition) and 220 MB of available hard drive space
- Microsoft Windows 2000: 333 MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- Minimum 16-color/grayscale display with 640 x 480 pixel resolution (video graphics array [VGA])
- USB port (USB 1.1 or 2.0), or network connection
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

System requirements for 64-bit operating systems

- Pentium or compatible processor (Itanium not supported)
- Windows Vista: 800 MHz processor with 512 MB RAM, 15 GB available hard drive space
- 256 MB RAM or higher
- 1.5 GB of available hard drive space
- CD-ROM or DVD drive
- Super VGA (800 x 600) or higher-resolution video adapter and monitor

Installation overview

The printing system includes software for end users and network administrators, and print drivers for access to the product features and communication with the computer.

NOTE: For a list of print drivers and updated HP product software, go to <u>www.hp.com/go/</u> ljcp2020series_software.

The following drivers are not included on the CD, but are available from <u>www.hp.com/go/</u><u>ljcp2020series_software</u>.

- HP PostScript (PS) Universal Print Driver
- Linux drivers
- UNIX

Installation is similar for all supported Windows operating systems.

For Windows systems, the person installing the software must have administrator rights on the system.

When the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system installer runs, the HP LaserJet uninstaller is added to the system.

- Product configurations
- Software installation types for Windows
- Install drivers using a CD

Product configurations

The printing-system software can be used with the product in the following configurations:

- **USB Install**. Install the printing-system software on a computer that is directly connected to the product through a USB port.
- **Network Install**. Install the printing-system software on a computer that has access to a network to which the product is connected.

The installer incorporates each of these configuration choices in the installation sequence the user chooses from the software CD.

If the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is connected through a file or print server, the printingsystem software must be installed on the server before it is installed on any client systems. If the printingsystem software is not first installed on the server, bidirectional communication is not available to the client systems.

Software installation types for Windows

The following printing-system software installation types are available:

Figure 3-1 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Software Installation Types



• **Recommended Install**. Installs all the software components for the product, including the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer User Guide.

The Recommended Install installation type includes the following options:

- **Easy Install (recommended)**. Selecting this installation type indicates the acceptance of the installation agreements and default settings.
- **Advanced Install**. Selecting this installation type allows you to review all of the installation agreements and default settings.
- Express Install. Installs the HP PCL 6 print driver and SNP Alerts. The Express Install includes the following options:
 - **Express USB Install**. Installs the minimum software components for a product that uses a direct USB connection. Clicking this button indicates acceptance of HP's Software License terms.
 - **Express Network Install**. Installs the minimum software components for a product that is connected to a network. Clicking this button indicates acceptance of HP's Software License terms.

The following table indicates the components that are installed for each installation method.

Components installed	Recommended Install	Express Installs	Add Printer
HP PCL 6 print driver	Х	Х	
HP PS Universal Print Driver			X ¹
ToolboxFX w/Alerts	Х		
SNP Alerts		Х	Х
Screen fonts	Х		
Shop for HP Supplies (desktop shortcut)	Х		
Customer Participation Program 9.0	Х		
HP Update	Х		
Warranty Reminder (timed pop-up)	Х		

This driver is available for download from the HP.com Web site. A link to the Web site is provided on the product software CD. An internet connection is required.

For all supported operating systems, each installation type presents a series of dialog boxes that guides the installation. You are prompted to provide information about the host computer environment. The installer guides the installation, whether you are configuring a directly-connected or a network-connected product.

The installer detects hardware and network connections, and helps guide the installation. For example, if the installer detects an HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, it automatically configures most software features for the connection to that product. This saves several steps. If the installer detects a network, it also guides setting up those features.

Install drivers using a CD

Use the following instructions to install the print driver only.

- NOTE: Add Printer installs are not recommended unless the print port already exists. If the print port does not exist, use the Express Install method from the CD instead.
 - 1. Click Start, and then do one of the following:

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

-or-

For Windows Server 2003 and Windows XP Professional: Click Printers and Faxes.

-or-

For Windows XP Home: Click Control Panel, and then double-click the Printers and Faxes icon.

-or-

For Windows Vista: Click Computer, click Control Panel, and then click Hardware and Sound.

2. Double-click Add Printer, and then click Next.

- 3. When asked if the product is a local or network product, select local, and then click Next.
- 4. You might need to first select the product from the list or type a TCP/IP address. If the print driver is not available, the **Add Printer Wizard** dialog box appears. Click **Have Disk** on the wizard screen.
- 5. Insert the printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
- 6. To install the PCL 6 print driver, navigate to the root folder of the CD (where X is the letter of the CD-ROM drive) and click **OK**. The **Install Printer Software** dialog box appears. Select the print driver for the product and click **OK**.
- 7. Complete the installation. When prompted, print a test page to ensure that the print driver is installed correctly.

Detailed Microsoft Windows installation instructions

The following section shows the dialog box options that appear during the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software Recommended installation on Microsoft Windows Vista and Windows XP operating systems.

NOTE: HP recommends installing the software before connecting the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer to the computer (software-first installation). These instructions are for a software-first installation.

Use these instructions the first time the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software is installed.

Start the installation after closing out of all other programs. Insert the printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

NOTE: If the CD does not start automatically, click Start, click Run, and then browse to and doubleclick the autorun file in the root directory of the CD.

Installation begins with the Animated Getting Started Guide. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the animated Getting Started Guide, or click **Install Software**, to continue to the CD browser Welcome window.

Animated Getting Started Guide (GSG)

The printing-system software CD includes an animated Getting Started Guide. This guide includes instructions for preparing the product for use and the initial software install.

- Setup and installation instructions
- Animated GSG dialog boxes

Setup and installation instructions

The following includes instructions for setup of the printer and steps towards installing the driver software from the CD.

- 1. Close all programs.
- 2. Insert the printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
- 3. The Welcome screen of the animated install guide opens. Click Begin Setup.
- 4. The Choose your connection type screen opens. The options are: LAN Connection or USB Connection. Click USB Connection.
- 5. The Caution! Do not connect USB now. Wait until the software prompts you. screen opens. Click Continue.
- 6. Click Install Product Software.
- 7. The CD browser window opens. Select the desired install method: **Recommended Install** or **Express Install**.
- 8. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Animated GSG dialog boxes

The Animated GSG dialog boxes are presented in the following order.





Click the Walkaround tab to see details about the parts of the printer.

Figure 3-4 Animated GSG – Walkaround screen



Click the Index tab to see a list of available topics in the Animated GSG.

Figure 3-5 Animated GSG – Index screen

😡 HP CP 2020	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
	Home Install Product Software View User Guide
Index ~	
 Prepare a site for the printer Unpack the product Check the box contents Remove all orange shipping tape Prepare the product Prepare the product Prepare the print cartridges Load paper Turn on the product Set the language and location on the control panel Install the software Select installation option USB Network Product documentation 	Printer with 250-sheet tray

Click the top-level topic to go back to the first screen in the Animated GSG sequence, **Prepare a site** for the printer.



Figure 3-6 Animated GSG – Prepare a site for the printer

Click **Product dimensions** to see the height and width of the product.

Figure 3-7 Animated GSG – Product dimensions screen



Click the **Next** button to go to the **Unpack the product** screen.





Click the Next button to go to the Install the 250-sheet tray screen.

Figure 3-9 Animated GSG – Install the 250-sheet tray

© HP CP2020			
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series			
	Home	Install Product Software	View User Guide
Prepare the product > Install 250-sheet tray			
	2 Start Star		
Lift the printer and install tray 3.			
Index 🔨 Walkaround			● →

Click the Next button to go to the Remove all orange shipping tapes screen.





Click the Next button to go to the Prepare the print cartridges screen.

Figure 3-11 Animated GSG – Prepare the print cartridges



Click the Next button to go to the Load paper screen.

Figure 3-12 Animated GSG – Load paper screen



Click the Next button to go to the Turn on the product screen.

Figure 3-13 Animated GSG – Turn on the product screen

O HP CP 2020			
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series			
	Home	Install Product Software	View User Guide
Turn on the product			
Connect the power cord.	<i></i>		
Index ~ Walkaround ~			◀ ⇒

Click the Next button to go to the Set language (if necessary) screen.



Figure 3-14 Animated GSG – Set language (if necessary) screen

Click the Next button to go to the Select installation option screen.

Figure 3-15 Animated GSG – Select installation option screen

🙆 HP CP 2020			
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series			
Install the software > Select installation option	Hor 코고	ne Install Product So Network USB	ftware View User Guide
Choose your connection type.	NAME OF CONTRACT OF CONTRACT		
Index 🔨 Walkaround			- 4 +

Click the Network button to go to the Install the product software – Network screen.

Figure 3-16 Animated GSG – Install the product software – Network screen



The product software installation begins and the Animated GSG closes.

Figure 3-17 Animated GSG – Install the product software – USB screen



The product software installation begins. Do not connect the USB cable between the product and the computer until you are prompted to do so.

Printing-system software installation for Microsoft Windows

After the Animated Getting Started Guide runs, the CD browser **Welcome – Select Install** window opens.

Figure 3-18 Welcome! – Select Install to begin installing your new HP device (launch pad)



When you click **Recommended Install**, the **Please Allow All HP Install Wizard Processes** window opens.



Figure 3-19 Recommended Install – Please Allow All HP Install Wizard Processes

Click Next. The Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window opens.

Figure 3-20 Recommended Install – Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window



In the Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window:

- Select **Easy Install** and then click **Next**. The **Connection Type** window opens. (See <u>Figure 3-28</u> <u>Connection Type window on page 146</u> to continue.)
- Select Advanced Install and then click Next. The Automatically check for updates window opens. (See Figure 3-25 Recommended Install (Advanced) – Automatically Check for Updates window on page 144.)

The links in Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install open the following windows:

- Software End User License Agreement
- Automatic Software Updates FAQ
- Recommended Software Package
- Yahoo Toolbar option (if not already installed)
- HP Privacy Policy
- Details on the Internet Connection Capabilities

The **Software End User License Agreement** window opens as part of the Advanced Install process. The following are those that can only be accessed via the **Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install** window.

Recommended Suite of Software	
The following is installed when selecting the recommended option	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Drivers	~
Installs basic driver software for your HP Color LaserJet.	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
Installs additional software for your HP Color LaserJet.	
HP Customer Participation Program	
This software may help you receive additional benefits available to you as an HP printing custo opportunity to join our Customer Participation Program and help improve product quality, reliabil	
After the software installation, when invited to enroll, you can choose whether to share any info HP's privacy policy which can be accessed via the link below.	ormation with HP. This program is governed by
To learn more about what information could be shared with HP by this program click the "intern install this software, it may occasionally connect to HP to check for and retrieve updates. No p exception of your IP address, will be transmitted from your computer without your permission.	
Shop for HP Supplies	
Provides direct, online access to purchase HP supplies.	
HP Update	
Provides an easy and convenient way to keep your HP devices and software up to date.	
Yahoo! Toolbar customized for HP	
Provides easy access to HP support, projects, printer supplies and accessories, special offers a	and web search powered by Yahoo!

Figure 3-21 Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – Recommended Software Package

Figure 3-22 Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – Automatic Software Updates FAQ



Figure 3-23 Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – HP Privacy Policy

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	×
HP Privacy Policy	
HP is committed to protecting your privacy. Unless you give your consent to have your information shared with others, the information you provide will only be shared with other HP entities and business partners who are providing services on behalf of HP to perform only and exactly the processing steps as described in detail and are bound by confidentiality agreements. These HP entities and partners may be located overseas. We will give you the option of whether or not HP may communicate directly with you. For more information, please see the HP Privacy Statement at www.hp.com/go/privacy or contact HP Privacy Mailbox, 20555 SH 249, MS 040307, Houston, TX 77070, USA.	<
	\$
Close	

Figure 3-24 Choose Easy Install or Advanced Install window – Details on the Internet Connection Capabilities

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series				
Internet Connection Capability	(p)			
Some of the software that is available to be installed has the ability to connect over the internet and transmit data. HP respects the privacy of its customers and this notification is provided in order to make you aware of this potential in accordance with the Hewlett-Packard Privacy Policy and international law.				
HP Customer Participation Program				
If, when invited, you choose to enroll in the Customer Participation program the following information may be shared by this software with HP.				
What	Examples			
Basic information about your PC	Operating system, locale, time zone			
Basic printer identification	Model number, serial number			
Printing volumes	Number of ink cartridges, types of pages printed			
Printing events	Low on ink warnings			
What features of your printer	Photo cards, fax, scan	~		
	Close]		

The Automatically Check for Updates window opens.

Click Yes, please check for updates automatically (recommended) or No, I prefer to do this myself. Then, click Next.

Figure 3-25 Recommended Install (Advanced) – Automatically Check for Updates window

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	×
Automatically Check For Updates	
To get the latest features, reduce the chance of problems with your HP products, and have the best chance to automatically fix problems if they should occur, you need to keep your HP software up to date. You can either do this manually or allow HP to check for updates automatically.	
Would you like HP to check for software updates automatically?	
\odot Yes, please check for updates automatically (recommended)	
◯ No, I prefer to do this myself	
Frequently Asked Questions	
HP Privacy Policy	
< Back Next > Cancel]

The End User License Agreement window opens.

Figure 3-26 Recommended Install (Advanced) – End User License Agreement window

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	×
License Agreement Please read the following license agreement carefully.	
End User License Agreement	^
PLB ASB RB AD CARBFULLY BBFORB USING THIS SOFTWARB PRODUCT: This Bnd-User license Agreement ("BULA") is a contract between (a) you (either an individual or the entity you represent) and (b) Hewlett-Packard Company ("HP") that governs your use of the software product ("Software"). This BULA does not apply if there is a separate license agreement between you and HP or its suppliers for the Software, including a license agreement in online documentation. The term "Software" may include (i) associated media, (ii) a user guide and other printed materials, and (iii) "online" or electronic documentation (collectively "User Documentation").	:
RIGHTS IN THE SOFTWARE ARE OFFERED ONLY ON THE CONDITION THAT YOU AGREE TO ALL TERMS AN CONDITIONS OF THIS BULA. BY INSTALLING, COPVING, DOWNLOADING, OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWAR YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THIS BULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THIS BULA, DO NOT INSTALL, DOWNLOAD, O OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE. IF YOU PURCHASED THE SOFTWARE BUT DO NOT ACREE TO THIS BUL, PLEASE RETURN THE SOFTWARE TO YOUR PLACE OF PURCHASE WITHIN FOURTEEN DAYS FOR A REFUND OF TH PURCHASE PRICE; IF THE SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED ON OR MADE AVAILABLE WITH ANOTHER HP PRODUCT, YO MAY RETURN THE BUTIRE UNUSED PRODUCT.	B, R A, IB
1. THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE. The Software may include, in addition to HP proprietary software ("HP Software"), software und licenses from third parties ("Third Party Software" and "Third Party License"). Any Third Party Software is licensed to you subject to the terms and conditions of the corresponding Third Party License. Generally, the Third Party License is located in a file such as license to the readme file; you should contact HP support if you cannot find any Third Party License. If the Third Party Licenses include licenses the provide for the availability of source code (such as the GNU General Public License) and the corresponding source code. If the Software, then check the product support pages of HP's website (hp.com) to learn how to obtain such source code."	he or wat
 LICBNSB RIGHTS. You will have the following rights provided you comply with all terms and conditions of this BULA: 	~
< Back I Agree I Decline	

Click I Agree to continue the installation, or click I Decline to cancel the installation.

If software from a previous HP product has already been installed on the system, the **Thank you for buying another HP product** window opens indicating where the software files will be installed on the computer.

Figure 3-27 Recommended Install (Advanced) – Thank you for buying another HP product window

🐻 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series 🛛 🛛 🗙			
Thank you	I for buying another HP product!		
	To work properly with your other HP products, this software must be installed to the following location. Any previous version of this software found on your computer will be updated to provide you the latest features and support.		
Þ	C:\Program Files\HP\		
	< Back Next > Cancel		

Click Next to continue to the Connection Type window.

The Connection Type window opens.

Figure 3-28 Connection Type window

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
Connection Type Choose how you will connect your device to this computer.	$\langle p \rangle$
⊙ Directly to this computer using a USB cable.	
Through the network.	
Click Next to continue.	
	< Back Next > Cancel

On the **Connection Type** window, click **Directly to this computer using a USB cable** or **Through the network**; and then, click **Next**.

If you clicked **Through the network**, continue to the **Identify a printer** window. (See <u>Figure 3-30 Identify</u> <u>a printer window on page 148</u>.)

NOTE: On a network connection in which non-Windows firewall software is used, a **Firewall Notice** window opens. Click **Next** to continue.

If you clicked **Directly to this computer using a USB cable** and click **Next**, the **Connect your device now** window opens.

Figure 3-29 Connect your device now window

🐞 HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
Connect Your Device Now	
1. Make sure the device is powered on.	
2. Connect the USB cable.	
Help < Back Next >	Cancel

Once the USB cable is connected from the computer to the product, the install continues automatically. The **Congratulations!** window opens indicating the install is complete. Continue to the **Congratulations!** window. (See the Figure 3-36 Congratulations! Software Installation is complete window (Resting Pad) on page 153.)

Figure 3-30 Identify a printer window

HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series		
Identify Printer		
Setup can search for printers on your network or you can specify a particular printer by its address.		
Choose a method to search for the printer:		
 Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended) Specify a printer by address 		
O IP Address (IPv4) or Hostname		
Hardware Address (MAC)		
Нер	< Back Next > Cancel	

On the **Identify a printer** window, click **Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended)** or **Specify a printer by address** and type the printer address in the field provided. Then, click **Next**.

The Firewall Notice window opens.

Click **Next** to continue.

NOTE: The following window opens when using a Windows Firewall. If a non-Windows Firewall is used, the **Printers Found** window opens.

Figure 3-31 Firewall Notice window

Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Setup	
Firewall Notice	
Important message regarding the Windows Firewall.	
Setup is ready to search for printers on your network. To do this, Setup will need to communicate through your Windows Firewall to find available printers. Communicating through Windows Firewall is necessary in order to find printers on your network and should not lead to any increased security risk.	
Click 'Next' to continue with the installation. If you do not want to continue with the installation. click 'Cancel' to exit.	
See Help for more information.	
Help < Back Next >	Cancel

- If the **Printer Not Found** dialog opens, do one of the following:
 - Click Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended).
 - Select **Help me find my network printer**, type the IP Address (IPv4) or Hostname, or type the Hardware Address, and click **Next**.

Figure 3-32 Printer Not Found dialog	
HP - Color LaserJet CP2020 Series	
Printer Not Found	
Verify that the printer is properly connected and turned on.	
	1F
Choose a method to search for the printer:	
 Select from a list of detected printers (Recommended) 	
 Specify a printer by address]
IP Address (IPv4) or Hostname	
Hardware Address (MAC)	
Help	<pre></pre>

The **Printers Found** window opens.

Figure 3-33 Printers Found window

r Lase	rJet CP2020 Serie	s Setup			
	Found				
Setup	found the following netw	ork printers. Select a setup	p option below.		<u> </u>
	 Install a discovered 	ed network printer.			
	Model	Hardware Address	IP Address	Hostname	
	HP Color LaserJet (192.168.0.10	NPI272CC4	
				Search Again	
	▲ 11 - In Cond	- torrado - sint-s			
	🔘 Help me find my r	network printer.			

Do one of the following, depending on the results in the **Printers Found** window:

- If the product was found, select **Install a discovered network printer** and click **Next**. The **Congratulations!** window opens.
- If the product was not found, click Search Again.
- If the product was still not found, select Help me find my network printer and click Next. The Identify a printer window opens. (See Figure 3-30 Identify a printer window on page 148 to continue.)

 The installer automatically performs a firmware check on the product you have designated. If the firmware is out of date, the Auto Firmware Downloader screen appears and automatically updates the product firmware.

Figure 3-34 Auto Firmware Downloader window

Auto Firmware Downloader		
This installation has determined that the firmware in your printer needs to be updated. Please allow this update to happen without interruption.		
While the printer is being updated, please do not touch the printer, the cable, or the PC. Do not power cycle the printer.		
You will see the printer display indicate Downloading, Erasing, Programming, and then the printer will restart. At that time the Continue button below will become enabled, and you may select it.		
The programming operation normally takes about 3 minutes.		
Continue		

The next screen that appears informs you that the computer needs to be restarted to continue the installation. Click **Restart**.



Figure 3-35 Restart window

When the computer restarts, the installer completes the installation process and the **Congratulations! Install Finished** screen appears.

The Congratulations! Software Installation is complete (Resting Pad) window opens.

Figure 3-36 Congratulations! Software Installation is complete window (Resting Pad)



On the **Congratulations! (Resting Pad)** window, browse through the various CD browser features or click **Exit** to close the CD browser.

The Sign up now window opens. Click Next to sign up and register the product.

Figure 3-37 Sign up now

Sign up now
Sign up now Select your location: United States
Welcome!
By taking just a few moments to sign up, you can enjoy:
 Quicker service and more efficient support to fit your busy lifestyle
 Timely driver and software update notification
The latest product support alerts to maximize your productivity Customized e-newsletters loaded with tips and tricks
Customized entewsteaters to add with tips and tinks HP respects your privacy. With HP your personal information remains private and is not shared with anyone outside of HP. By clicking Next, you will
Prespects your privacy. With the your personal information remains private and is not shared with anyone outside of the by clicking Next, you will transmit HP product and PC configuration information to HP. To view HP's full privacy statement, visit www.hp.com.
Next Cancel

The HP Registration window opens. Fill in the appropriate fields, and follow the onscreen instructions.



Install optional software

To install additional software, insert the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system CD. If the driver software has already been installed, the **Welcome Back!** window opens. Click **Install More Software** or **Marketing Resource Software** to install additional software.

Figure 3-39 V	Velcome Back!	window
---------------	---------------	--------



The following options are available from this screen.

- **Optimizing Print Quality (video)**. Select this option to view a short video that shows simple steps for getting the best print quality when printing on special paper such as cardstock, heavy paper, or transparencies.
- Locate the User Guide. Select this option to open either an online or printable version of the product user guide.
- **Connect another CP2020 Series Device**. Select this option to add a print driver other than the one that was added during the previous installation. The installer provides an option to direct connect or connect via the network.
- **More Information**. Select this option to open a screen that offers links to information such as the product Readme, the product support Web site, and the HP Sure Supply Web site.
- **Uninstall**. Select this option to uninstall the drivers or software from your computer.

The following two options in the **Welcome Back!** window include additional software options available for download from a Web site or install from the CD browser.

- **Install More Software.** Get the most from your HP products by selecting additional software to install.
- **Marketing Resource software.** Tools, templates, classes and more, to enable you to create marketing materials in-house, to grow your business while saving money.

Install More Software

The **Install More Software** window contains the following options, depending upon which installation method used:

- Universal Print Driver
- Basic Color Match
- HP Easy Printer Care
- HP Smart Web Printing

Figure 3-40 Install More Software window

MP - Color	r LaserJet CP2020 Series	X
Install More Software		
Select a button below to start installing	g additional software.	
Universal Print Driver		
Basic <u>C</u> olor Match	Part Martin	T
HP <u>E</u> asy Printer Care		1
HP Smart <u>W</u> eb Printing		K
<u>B</u> ack		

The content below provides detailed information about the Install More Software option.

Recommended Install

The options available in the **Install More Software** vary depending on the installation method used to install the printing-system software.

If the printing-system software was installed using the Express Install method, the **Install More Software** window contains a **Recommended Install** option.

Use this option to change the installed version of printing-system software from an Express Install to a Recommended Install. All additional components included in a **Recommended Install** will be installed.

Universal Print Driver

Get a universal print driver. Click this button to go to the HP Web site to download a universal print driver for your product.

Basic Color Match

HP Basic Color Match software allows you to adjust spot color in your printed output. For example, you can match the color of your company logo on your printed output. You can save and use the new color schemes for specific documents or all printed documents, or you can create multiple color schemes that you can choose from later. Click this button to go to the HP Web site to download the HP Basic Color Match software.

HP Easy Printer Care

With HP Easy Printer Care software, manage and monitor up to 15 products from your desktop. HP Easy Printer Care software allows you to view the printer status, create print usage reports, reorder supplies, and troubleshoot and repair products via HP Proactive Support. Click this button to go to the HP Easy Printer Care free software download page.

HP Smart Web Printing

Click this button to go to the HP Web Smart Printing free download page.

HP Smart Web Printing lets you select, store and organize text and graphics from multiple web pages and then edit and print exactly what you see onscreen. It gives you the control you need to print meaningful information while minimizing waste.

Supported operating systems

- Microsoft Windows 2000
- Microsoft Windows XP
- Microsoft Vista

Requirements

- Internet Explorer 6.0 and higher
- 16 MB of hard disk space
- 800x600 monitor with 16-bit or higher color depth

Features

- Automatically scales output to fix right-edge clipping and eliminate wasteful prints containing clipped pages or a few lines of useless text
- Provides a preview with automatic fixes and more control over printed output
- Allows users to select text and graphics easily from any Web site and save a handy list of clips

- Provides a Clip Book pane that can be hidden (similar to IE Favorites, Search, and History panes)
- Provides a Print Clip window to compose and modify clip before printing

Marketing Resource software

Clicking **Marketing Resource Software** in the **Welcome Back!** window opens a Web browser. The **HP Marketing Resources Software** Web site opens. The software can be downloaded from this site.

The HP Marketing Resources Software is a suite of templates and tools, including HP Print Preview, that you can use to produce professional-quality marketing material using the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product.

User uninstall software

Uninstall instructions for Windows

Uninstall instructions for Windows

The uninstall procedures vary according to the type of installation that you used.

- Uninstall a Recommended or Express installation
- Uninstall a print-driver only installation

Uninstall a Recommended or Express installation

- NOTE: If you uninstall the software for troubleshooting purposes, try uninstalling only a specific product. The shared software programs might not uninstall successfully, and are unlikely to be the cause of product-specific problems. These shared software programs should not need to be uninstalled, especially if they are being used by another HP product.
 - Use the product software Uninstall component (recommended)
 - Use the Windows Add or Remove Programs component
 - Use the printing-system software CD

Use the product software Uninstall component (recommended)

Follow these steps to uninstall the printing-system software by using the **Uninstall** component.

- **NOTE:** To uninstall the software you must have administrator privileges.
 - 1. Quit all open programs.
 - 2. Click Start, select Programs or All Programs, select HP, select HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series, and then click Uninstall.
 - 3. The Important Uninstall Information dialog box appears. Click Continue.
 - 4. The **Cleanup progress** dialog box appears. The progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.
 - 5. When the uninstall process is completed, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to restart the computer and finish the uninstall process.

Use the Windows Add or Remove Programs component

Follow these steps to uninstall the printing-system software by using the Windows **Add/Remove programs** component.

NOTE: To uninstall the software in Windows operating systems, you must have administrator privileges.

- 1. Quit all open programs.
- 2. Click Start, click Control Panel, double-click Add or Remove Programs.
- 3. Click **Change or Remove programs** on the left side of the window, and then click the name of the product. Click **Remove**.

- 4. The Important Uninstall Information dialog box appears. Click Continue.
- The Cleanup progress dialog box appears. The progress bar reflects the status of the uninstall process.
- 6. When the uninstall process is completed, the **Restart** dialog box appears. Click **Restart** to restart your computer and finish the uninstall process.

Use the printing-system software CD

- 1. Quit all open programs.
- 2. Insert the printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive. After the system is checked, the **Welcome back!** dialog box appears.

Figure 3-41 Welcome back!

HP - Color Las	erJet CP2020 Series
Welcome Back! Select a button below to begin doing more with I	HP.
Optimizing Print Quality (video)	Watch a short video that shows the simple steps to getting the best print quality when printing on special paper such as
Locate the User <u>G</u> uide	cardstock, heavy paper, or transparencies.
Install More <u>S</u> oftware	
Connect another CP2020 Series Device	
More Information	
<u>U</u> ninstall	
Marketing <u>R</u> esource software	
E <u>x</u> it	

3. Click Uninstall and then follow the onscreen prompts..

Uninstall a print-driver only installation

- **NOTE:** To uninstall the software, you must have administrator privileges.
 - 1. Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers.
 - **NOTE:** For Windows XP and Windows Vista, click **Start**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.
 - 2. Right-click the icon for the product and then click **Delete**. This removes the icon for the product only, but it does not remove the associated files.
 - 3. To remove the associated files, click **File** from inside the **Printers** folder, and then click **Server Properties**.
- 4. Click the **Driver** tab, click the name of the product, and then click **Remove**. When you are prompted to confirm the deletion, click **Yes**.
- 5. Click **Close** to close the **Server Properties** dialog box, and then close the **Printers** folder.

Install Windows printingsystem components

4 HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports the following drivers: the HP PCL 6 print driver and the HP PS Universal Print Driver.

- Change the print driver settings for Windows
- Help system
- Advanced tab features
- Printing Shortcuts tab
- Paper/Quality tab features
- Effects tab features
- Finishing tab features
- <u>Color tab features</u>
- <u>Services tab features</u>
- Device Settings tab features
- About tab features

Change the print driver settings for Windows

Operating System	To change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed	To change the default settings for all print jobs	 To change the device configuration settings
Windows 2000, XP, Server 2003, and Vista	 On the File menu in the software program, click Print. Select the driver, and then click Properties or Preferences. The steps can vary; this procedure is most common. 	 Click Start, click Settings, and then click Printers (Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes (Windows XP Professional and Server 2003) or Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Windows XP Home). For Windows Vista, click Start, click Control Panel and then click Printer. Right-click the driver icon, and then select Printing Preferences. 	and then click Printers (Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes (Windows XP Professional and Server 2003) or Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Windows XP Home). For Windows Vista, click

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. Follow these instructions to access the **Printing Preferences** tabs.

1. In Windows Vista, click **Computer**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound**.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click Printing Preferences.

The following Printing Preferences tabs are available:

- Advanced
- Printing Shortcuts
- Paper/Quality
- Effects

- Finishing
- Color
- Services

Properties driver tabs

The **Properties** driver tabs control the driver behavior and driver connections. Follow these instructions to access the **Properties** tabs.

1. In Windows Vista, click **Computer**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Hardware and Sound**.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click Properties.

The following **Properties** tabs are available:

- General
- Sharing
- Ports
- Advanced
- Color Management
- Security
- Device Settings
- About

The **Device Settings** and **About** tabs are HP driver tabs and are described in this guide. The other **Properties** tabs are Microsoft Windows tabs. For information about those tabs, see the documentation that came with the computer.

Help system

The HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options. The following Help options are available.

- <u>"What's this?" Help</u>
- <u>Constraint messages</u>

"What's this?" Help

"What's this?" Help is supported in Microsoft Windows 2000 and Windows XP. Access the "What's this?" Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click a control button on a screen. For example, on the **Properties** tab screen, right-click either the **Printing Preferences** control or the **Print Test Page** control. A small **What's this?** box appears. Right-click on the **What's this?** box and a pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the screen frame, next to the **X**, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. Use this special cursor to select a control, and the pop-up Help window for that feature appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the currently selected control appears.

Constraint messages

Constraint messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific actions that are illogical or impossible given the capabilities of the product or the current settings of other controls. For example, if you click **Print on Both Sides** and then change the paper type to **Transparency**, a message appears with options on how to resolve this conflict.

Figure 4-1 A typical constraint message

Incompa	tible Print Settings 🛛 🔀
⚠	There are one or more conflicting settings. One of the conflicting settings is:
	Allow Manual Duplexing : On Media Type : Color Laser Transparency
	O Restore my previous settings.
	 Keep this setting, and I will change it later.
	ОК

Whenever a constraint message appears with **Restore my previous settings** or **Keep this setting**, **and I will change it later** buttons, the action of the buttons is as follows:

- To reject the change that was just made, returning the control to its previous value, click **Restore my previous settings** and then click **OK**.
- To accept the change that was just made, click **Keep this setting, and I will change is later** and then click **OK**. This brings back the driver settings where the user can resolve the conflict.

Advanced tab features

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages, to configure special controls that are not commonly used, and to change other settings such as the paper size and number of copies. Many software programs also enable control of some **Advanced** tab features when accessed through the print dialog box or page settings.

Figure 4-2	Advanced tab – PCL 6	

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series PCL 6 Printing Preferences	? 🛛
Advanced Printing Shortcuts Paper/Quality Effects Finishing Color Services	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series PCL 6 Advanced Document Settings Graphic Graphic Print Graphic Print All Text as Black: Disabled Send True Type as Bitmap: Disabled Raster Compression: Automatic Print Data Optimization: Auto Attentive Letterhead Mode: Off Layout Options Page Order: Front to Back	
OK Cancel	Apply

Figure 4-3 Advanced tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver



The Advanced tab contains the following controls:

- Paper/Output settings
- Graphic settings
- Document Options settings

Paper/Output settings

The Paper/Output setting contains the Copy Count settings.

Copy Count setting

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The requested number of copies appears in the **Copy Count** option. Select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows on the right side of the text box. For the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer, valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used.

When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than 9999) change to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Problems can develop when a software program and the driver it is running on both allow the user to set the number of copies to print. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate, so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the program) appears in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver might result in the product making 100 copies (10 x 10). Set the number of copies in the software program, whenever possible.

Graphic settings

The **Graphic** settings contain the following controls.

- Image Color Management settings
- TrueType Font settings

Image Color Management settings

Image Color Management (ICM) options are used for printing color graphics. The ICM options make it possible for programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely matches the color of printed images. The following options are available:

- ICM Method. The ICM Method setting specifies how to print color graphics. The default setting for ICM Method is ICM Disabled. Additional options on the ICM Method drop-down menu include:
 - **ICM Handled by Host System**. Click this option to perform calculations for color matching on the host computer before sending the document to the product.
 - ICM Handled by Printer. Click this option to perform calculations for color matching on the product. A set of rules for mapping the colors is created and downloaded to the product (which must be PostScript language level 2 or higher). The product uses these rules to adjust colors in the document.
- **ICM Intent**. The ICM Intent setting specifies how color images are created to produce the bestlooking image on the printed page.
 - If printing a chart or using fully saturated, bright colors, click Graphics to achieve the best quality.
 - For photographs or pictures where the colors blend together, click **Pictures** to maximize the contrast.
 - If the document uses a color that you need to match exactly, and you are sending the document to a product that has that specific color of ink, click **Proof**.
 - To preview the color settings from another product, click **Match**.

TrueType Font settings

This option specifies the TrueType Font settings. The following settings are available:

- **Substitute with Device Font**. This setting causes the product to use equivalent fonts for printing documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing; however, special characters that the printer font does not support might be lost. This is the default setting.
- **Download as Softfont**. This setting causes TrueType fonts to be downloaded and used for printing, instead of the fonts installed through the product.

Document Options

The **Document Options** settings contain the following controls:

- Advanced Printing Features
- PostScript Options (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)
- Printer Features
- Layout Options

Advanced Printing Features

When the **Advanced Printing Features** setting is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and the **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available,

depending on the product. For normal printing, leave the **Advanced Printing Features** setting at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even if they have been disabled. If you select an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab, the feature is automatically turned on again.

PostScript Options (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

The following PostScript options appear in the HP PS Universal Print Driver:

- PostScript Output Option
- TrueType Font Download Option
- PostScript Language Level
- Send PostScript Error Handler

PostScript Output option

The **PostScript Output Option** specifies the output format for PS files. Generally, use the default setting, **Optimize for Speed**, to print the documents.

To create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC), click **Optimize for Portability**. Each page of the document will be a self-contained object. This is useful when creating a PS file and printing it on a different product. To include the file as an image in another document that is printed from a different software program, click **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)**. The **Archive Format** creates a PS file that can be used later.

TrueType Font Download option

The **TrueType Font Download Option** specifies how TrueType fonts are downloaded. The default setting of **Automatic** allows the HP PS Universal Print Driver to decide which format is best.

- To download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font, click **Outline**.
- To download the TrueType font as a bitmap font, click **Bitmap**.
- If the product is a TrueType rasterizer printer, click **Native TrueType** to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

PostScript Language Level

The **PostScript Language Level** option specifies which PS language level to use, from 1 to 3. The highest level supported by the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is 3, and this is the default setting. Some products support multiple levels.

It is usually best to select the highest number available, because a higher language level provides more features. In some instances level 1 should be used, such as when printing a file to disk, and that file will be printed by someone who uses a level-1 product.

Send PostScript Error Handler

The **Send PostScript Error Handler** setting specifies whether a PS error-handler message is sent. To get the product to print an error page when an error occurs in the print job, click **Yes**. The default setting is **Yes**.

Printer Features

The following Printer Features are available:

- Print All Text as Black
- Send TrueType as Bitmap (PCL 6 only)
- Raster Compression (PCL 6 only)
- Print Data Optimization (PCL 6 only)
- Alternative Letterhead Mode (PCL 6 only)

Print All Text as Black

The **Print All Text as Black** feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. Color text is printed as black, except for white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic. **Print All Text as Black** remains enabled only for the current print job. When the current print job is completed, **Print All Text as Black** is automatically disabled.

Send TrueType as Bitmap (PCL 6 only)

Send TrueType as Bitmap provides an alternative for those software programs that encounter problems when TrueType fonts are used for special graphic purposes such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** (off) by default. The TrueType fonts are first converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. The **Enabled** setting causes the driver to send TrueType fonts to the product as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

Raster Compression (PCL 6 only)

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select the graphics compression method:

- Automatic. The software determines the best compression method to use.
- Best Quality. Forces the software to use a lossless compression method. (Lossless means that no data is lost during compression.)
- **Maximum Compression**. Where applicable, requires the software to always use a lossy compression method (some data is lost). Choosing this option increases the print speed performance, but does decrease print image quality.

Print Data Optimization (PCL 6 only)

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is the first to offer Print Data Optimization (also known as hybrid printing). Implementation of this feature required changes to both the software (print driver) and the printer's firmware. The benefit of this feature is that files will print faster without any degradation of print quality. Print Data Optimization is a combination of the best of Page Description Language (PDL) printing with the best of host-based printing.

Print Data Optimization printing is possible only with the HP PCL 6 print driver. The Print Data Optimization feature allows the print job to use the host memory to ensure quick and high-quality printing. The print driver can be set to print like a host-based printer all the time (**Optimize for Raster**), a standard PCL printer all the time (**Optimize for Text and Vector**), or a mixture of both (**Auto**) depending upon the application you are printing from. By default, the feature is set to **Auto**. This sends data to the printer like a host-based print printer path for the list of applications below and

the **Optimize for Text and Vector** path for all other applications. The feature is set in the **Advanced** tab of the Printing Preferences of the HP PCL 6 print driver.

Applications that cause use of the Raster path

- AutoCad (ACAD.EXE)
- Adobe Acrobat (ACROBAT.EXE)
- Adobe Reader (ACRORD32.EXE)
- CorelDRAW® (CORELDRW.EXE)
- Adobe Illustrator (ILLUSTRATOR.EXE)
- Adobe PhotoShop® (PHOTOSHP.exe or PHOTOSHOP.EXE)
- Microsoft PowerPoint (POWERPOINT.EXE)
- Quark Express (QUARKXPRESS.EXE)

Print Data Optimization is a feature that is only available in Windows printing. When the product is installed in the Windows environment, Print Data Optimization printing is automatically enabled. The Print Data Optimization feature is not available for Mac, Linux, or other operating systems.

The following Print Data Optimization options are available; Auto is selected by default.

- **Auto**. The default mode. In this mode, the driver behaves like a host-based printer only for the applications listed above and behaves like a standard PCL6 print driver for all other applications.
- Optimize for Raster. In this mode, the print driver always sends data like a host-based print driver.
- **Optimize for Text and Vector**. In this mode, the print driver always sends data like a standard PCL6 print driver.

The Print Data Optimization feature can be changed from **Auto** to **Optimize for Raster** or **Optimize for Text and Vector**.

Selecting **Optimize for Raster** causes the driver to always use the Raster path when printing; and, selecting **Optimize or Text and Vector** causes the driver to always use the PDL path.

Alternative Letterhead Mode (PCL 6 only)

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides. If the product tray has an icon that indicates whether to load paper either face-up or face-down, load the paper in opposite orientation of that shown.

When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the Paper type setting:

- Letterhead
- Preprinted

Layout Options

The Layout Options setting offers different ways of setting up the Page Order.

- Front to Back. Prints the document so that page 1 prints first.
- **Back to Front**. Prints the document so that page 1 prints last; useful to achieve output in the correct order when printing to a face-up page output bin.
- NOTE: The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of paper rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if by setting **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) to be greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of paper does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab in the Printing Properties window to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-4 Printing Shortcute	s tab – PCL 6
💑 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series PCL 6 Printin	g Preferences 🔹 🤉 🔀
Advanced Printing Shortcuts Paper/Quality Effects Fini	shing Color Services
A printing shortcut is a collection of saved print settings that y with a single click.	iou can select
Printing shortcuts:	
General Everyday Printing	
Envelopes	Paper type: Unspecified
Cardstock/Heavy	Paper sizes: 8.5 × 11 inches Letter
Glossy/Presentation	Paper source: Automatically Select
Snapshot Photos	Color options:
Labels	Color V
Save As Delete Reset	
	About Help
	OK Cancel Apply

Figure 4-5 Printing Shortcuts tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver

Sector Printing PS Printing Preferences	?	X
Advanced Printing Shortcuts Paper/Quality Effects Finishing	Color Services	
A printing shortcut is a collection of saved print settings that you c with a single click.	an select	
Printing shortcuts:		
Factory Defaults		
User Guide Print Settings	Paper sizes: 8.5 × 11 inches Letter	
	Paper source:	
	Automatically Select 🗸	
	Pages per sheet:	
	1 page per sheet	
	No	
	Paper type:	
	Unspecified 🕑	
	Orientation:	
	Portrait	
Save As Delete Reset		
	About Help)
	OK Cancel Apply	

The Printing Shortcuts tab is a new tab that appears on the HP PCL 6 print driver and the HP PS Universal Print Driver beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the Printing Shortcuts tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

Printing Shortcuts contains the following:

- General Everyday Printing (PCL 6 only)
- Envelopes (PCL 6 only)
- Cardstock/Heavy (PCL 6 only)
- Glossy/Presentation (PCL 6 only)
- Snapshot Photos (PCL 6 only)
- Labels (PCL 6 only)
- Transparencies (PCL 6 only)
- **Factory Defaults**
- User Guide Print Settings (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)
- Document preview image

General Everyday Printing (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Category	Option
Paper type:	The following options are available:
	Unspecified (default)
	• Plain
	HP LaserJet 90g
	HP Color Laser Matte 105g
	HP Premium Choice Matte 120g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g
	HP Superior Laser Matte 160g
	HP Cover Matte 200g
	HP Matte Photo 200g
	HP Presentation Glossy 130g
	HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g

Category	Option
	HP Tri-fold Color Laser Brochure 160g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g
	HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g
	HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g
	• Light 60-74g
	Mid-Weight 96-110g
	 Heavy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy 131-175g
	 Heavy Glossy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g
	Card Glossy 176-220g
	Color Laser Transparency
	Labels
	Letterhead
	Envelope
	Heavy Envelope
	Preprinted
	Prepunched
	Colored
	• Bond
	Recycled
	Rough
	Heavy Rough
	HP Tough Paper
Paper size:	The following options are available:
	Letter (default)
	• Legal
	Executive
	• 8.5x13
	• 4x6
	• 10x15cm
	• 5x8
	• A4

Table 4-1 General Everyday printing options (continued)

HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows

Category	Option
	• A5
	• A6
	• B4 (JIS)
	• B5 (JIS)
	• 8K 270x390 mm
	• 16K 195x270 mm
	• 16K 184xx260 mm
	• 8K 273x394 mm
	 16K 197x273 mm
	Postcard (JIS)
	Double Postcard (JIS)
	Envelope #10
	Envelope Monarch
	Envelope B5
	Envelope C5
	Envelope DL
Paper source:	The following options are available:
	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Print on both sides:	The following options are available:
	• No (default)
	Yes, Flip Over
	Yes, Flip Up
Color Options	The following options are available:
	Color (default)
	Black and white

 Table 4-1 General Everyday printing options (continued)

Envelopes (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Category	Options
Paper type:	Envelope (default)Heavy Envelope
Paper sizes:	 Envelope #10 (default) Envelope Monarch Envelope B5 Envelope C5 Envelope DL
Paper source:	 Automatically Select (default) Printer auto select Manual Feed in Tray 1 Tray 1 Tray 2

Table 4-2 Envelopes printing options

Cardstock/Heavy (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Category	Options
Paper type:	
	• HP Cover Matte 200g (default)
	• Heavy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy 131-175g
	Heavy Glossy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g
	Card Glossy 176-200g
Paper sizes:	The following options are available:
	• Letter (default)
	Legal

Category	Options
	Executive
	• 8.5x13
	• 4x6
	• 10x15cm
	• 5x8
	• A4
	• A5
	• A6
	• B4 (JIS)
	• B5 (JIS)
	• 8K 270x390 mm
	• 16K 195x270 mm
	• 16K 184xx260 mm
	• 8K 273x394 mm
	• 16K 197x273 mm
	Postcard (JIS)
	Double Postcard (JIS)
	Envelope #10
	Envelope Monarch
	Envelope B5
	Envelope C5
	Envelope DL
Paper source:	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Print on both sides:	•••••••
	No (default)
	• Yes, flip over
	Yes, flip up
Color options:	• Color (default)
	 Black & White

Table 4-3 Cardstock/Heavy printing options (continued)

Glossy/Presentation (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the Save as... and Reset buttons become active.

Click Save as... to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click Reset to restore the default settings.

Table 4-4 Glossy/Presentation printing options

Category	Options
Paper type:	HP Color Laser Matte 105g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g
	HP Superior Laser Matte 160g
	HP Cover Matte 200g
	HP Matte Photo 200g
	HP Presentation Glossy 130g
	HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g
	HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g
	HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g (default)
	 Mid-Weight Glossy 96-110g
	Heavy Glossy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g
	Card Glossy 176-220g
	Bond
	Rough
	Heavy Rough
	HP Tough Paper
Paper sizes:	
	Letter (default)
	• Legal
	Executive
	• 8.5x13
	• A4
	• B4 (JIS)
	• B5 (JIS)

Category	Options
	• 8K 273x394 mm
	 16K 197x273 mm
Paper source:	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Print on both sides:	• No (default)
	Yes, flip over
	• Yes, flip up
Color theme:	Default (sRGB) (default)
	Vivid
	Photo
	Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)
	None

Table 4-4 Glossy/Presentation printing options (continued)

Snapshot Photos (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Category	Options
Paper type:	
	HP Cover Matte 200g
	HP Matte Photo 200g)
	• HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g (default)
Paper sizes:	• 4x6 (default)
	• 10x15cm
Paper source:	
	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select

Category	Options
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Color theme:	Default (sRGB)
	Vivid
	Photo (default)
	Photo (Adobe RGB 1998)
	None

Table 4-5 Snapshot printing options (continued)

Labels (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click Save as... to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Category	Options
Paper type:	Labels
Paper sizes:	Letter (default)
	• Legal
	Executive
	• 8.5x13
	• A4
	• B4 (JIS)
	• B5 (JIS)
	• 8K 273x394 mm
	• 16K 197x273 mm

Table 4-6 Labels printing options

able 4-6 Labers printing options (continued)	
Category	Options
Paper source:	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Color options:	• Color (default)
	 Black & White

Table 4-6 Labels printing options (continued)

Transparencies (PCL 6 only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings

Category	Options
Paper type:	Color Laser Transparency
Paper sizes:	Letter (default)
	• Legal
	Executive
	• 8.5x13
	• 4x6
	• 10x15cm
	• 5x8
	• A4
	• A5
	• A6
	• B4 (JIS)
	• B5 (JIS)
	• 8K 270x390 mm
	• 8K 273x394 mm
	• 16K 195x270 mm
	• 16K 184x260 mm

Category	Options
	 16K 197x273 mm
	Postcard (JIS)
	Double Postcard (JIS)
	Envelope #10
	Envelope Monarch
	Envelope B5
	Envelope C5
	Envelope DL
Paper source:	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Color options:	Color (default)
	Black & White

Table 4-7 Transparencies printing options (continued)

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The Factory Defaults are as follows:

- Paper type: Unspecified
- Page size: Letter
- Paper source: Automatically select
- Print on both sides: No
- Color Options: Color

User Guide Print Settings (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

When options other than the defaults are selected, the Save as... and Reset buttons become active.

Click Save as... to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click Reset to restore the default settings.

Category	Option
Paper size:	The following options are available:
	Letter (default)
	• Legal
	Executive
	Statement
	• 8.5x13
	• A4
	• A5
	• B5 (JIS)
	• B4 (JIS)
	Executive (JIS)
	Double Japan Postcard Rotated
	• 8K
	• 16K
	Envelope #10
	Envelope Monarch
	Envelope B5
	Envelope C5
	Envelope DL
	Envelope B5
Paper source:	The following options are available:
	Automatically Select (default)
	Printer auto select
	Manual Feed in Tray 1
	• Tray 1
	• Tray 2
Pages per sheet	The following options are available:
	1 page per sheet
	2 pages per sheet
	4 pages per sheet
	6 pages per sheet
	 9 pages per sheet
	 16 pages per sheet

Table 4-8 User Guide Print Settings – HP PS Universal Print Driver only

Category	Option
Print on both sides:	The following options are available:
	• No (default)
	Yes, Flip Over
	• Yes, Flip Up
Paper type:	The following options are available:
	Unspecified (default)
	• Plain
	HP LaserJet 90g
	HP Color Laser Matte 105g
	HP Premium Choice Matte 120g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g
	HP Superior Laser Matte 160g
	HP Cover Matte 200g
	HP Matte Photo 200g
	HP Presentation Glossy 130g
	HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g
	HP Tri-fold Color Laser Brochure 160g
	HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g
	HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g
	HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g
	• Light 60-74g
	 Mid-Weight 96-110g
	• Heavy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy 131-175g
	Heavy Glossy 111-130g
	Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g
	Card Glossy 176-220g
	Color Laser Transparency
	Labels
	Letterhead
	Envelope
	Heavy Envelope
	Preprinted

Table 4-8 User Guide Print Settings – HP PS Universal Print Driver only (continued)

Category	Option
	Prepunched
	Colored
	• Bond
	Recycled
	Rough
	Heavy Rough
	HP Tough Paper
Orientation	The following options are available:
	Portrait
	Landscape

Table 4-8 User Guide Print Settings – HP PS Universal Print Driver only (continued)

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-6 Document preview image



Paper/Quality tab features

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the paper. Also use this tab to specify different paper selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document.

The following figure shows the Paper/Quality tab.

HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series PCL 6 Printin	g Preferences	? 🛛
Advanced Printing Shortcuts Paper/Quality Effects Finis Paper Sizes: 8.5 × 11 inches Letter Custom Paper source: Automatically Select	hing Color Services	
Paper type: Unspecified	Print Quality	
Covers Print pages on different paper Settings	ImageREt 3600 HP real life technologies: RLT photo fix 'off' Remove red eye	~
	About	Help

Figure 4-8 Paper/Quality tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver

HP Universal Printing PS	Printing Preferences		?
dvanced Printing Shortcuts P	aper/Quality Effects Finis	hing Color Services	
Paper Options		E	
Paper sizes:	8.5×14 inches		
Legal	~		
	Custom		
Paper source:			
Automatically Select	~		
Paper type:			
Plain	~		
Special pages: Covers Print pages on different p	aper	Print Quality ImageREt 3600 Gloss Level:	~
		Default	~
	Settings		
		About	Help
		OK Cancel	Apply

The Paper/Quality tab contains the following options:

- Paper Options
- Document preview image
- Print Quality group box

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the default selections.

Figure 4-9	Paper	Options	group box
------------	-------	---------	-----------

aper sizes:	8.5 × 11 inche
Letter	~
	Custom
aper source:	
Automatically Select	~
aper type:	
Unspecified	
onspecifica	•
·	•
pecial pages:	
pecial pages: Covers	
pecial pages: Covers Print pages on different paper	Settings

The settings in the Paper Options group box are described in the following order:

- Paper size: on page 189
- Custom Paper Size on page 190
- Paper source: on page 192
- Paper type: on page 192
- Special pages on page 194

Paper size:

Paper size: is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported paper sizes.

Move the cursor over the dimensions label to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because paper-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, use the driver to set paper size only when printing from software programs that do not include a paper-size setting, such as NotePad, or when producing a book or a booklet that does not require different paper sizes.

NOTE: Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different paper sizes within a single document.

When you change the print-driver setting to a paper size that is not currently loaded in the product, a control-panel message prompts you to load the paper size or select another tray.

Custom Paper Size

The Custom Paper Size dialog box appears when you click Custom... on the Paper/Quality tab.

The following figure shows the initial appearance of the Custom Paper Size dialog box.

Custom Paper	i Size	? 🛛
	per size you have just defined will r exited and re-entered the Printing I	
Name		
Custom		Save
Paper Size		Units
Width:	8.50	 Inches
	(3.00 - 8.50)	
Length:	11.00	◯ Millimeters
	(5.00 - 14.00)	
		OK Cancel

Figure 4-10 Print/Quality tab – Custom Paper Size dialog box

Name

Use the Name text box to type a new name for a custom paper size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom paper size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the Paper/Quality tab, the Name text box shows the name of the selected custom paper size.
- If a standard paper size has been selected on the Paper/Quality tab, the Name text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper Size

Change the width and height values by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height edit box is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height edit box is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom paper-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom paper-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each edit box is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum paper size for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer is 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) and the maximum is $215.9 \times 355.6 \text{ mm}$ (8.5 x 14 inches). The following tables summarizes paper size limits.

The following table identifies the paper types the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports in trays 1 and 2.

Tray 1 and Tray 2	Dimensions ¹	Weight	Capacity ²
Paper	Minimum: 76 x 127 mm	60 to 163 g/m ² (16 to 43 lb)	Single sheet of 75 g/m² (20 lb) paper for Tray 1
	(3 x 5 inches)	Up to 176 g/m ² (47 lb) for	
	Maximum: 216 x 356 mm	⁻ postcards	Up to 250 sheets for Tray 2
	(8.5 x 14 inches)		
HP LaserJet glossy paper and HP LaserJet photo paper	Same as the preceding listed minimum and maximum sizes.	75 to 220 g/m ² (20 to 58 lb)	Single sheet of HP LaserJet glossy paper or HP LaserJet photo paper for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
HP Premium Cover Paper ⁴	-	200 g/m ² (53 lb) cover	Single sheet of HP Cover paper for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
Transparencies and opaque film	-	Thickness: 0.10 to 0.13 mm	Single sheet of transparency or opaque film for Tray 1
		(3.9 to 5.1 mils)	
	-		Up to 50 sheets for Tray 2
Labels ³		Thickness: up to 0.23 mm (up to 9 mils)	Single sheet of labels for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
Envelopes	-	Up to 90 g/m ² (up to 24 lb)	Single envelope for Tray 1
			Up to ten envelopes for Tray 2

Table 4-9 Tray 1 and Tray 2 specifications

¹ The product supports a wide range of standard and custom sizes of paper. Check the print driver for supported sizes.

² Capacity can vary depending on paper weight and thickness, and environmental conditions.

³ Smoothness: 100 to 250 (Sheffield).

⁴ Hewlett-Packard does not guarantee results when printing with other types of heavy paper.

Paper source:

The **Paper source:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the product accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source:** drop-down menu can contain the following options:

- Automatically Select
- Printer auto select
- Manual Feed in Tray 1
- Tray 1
- Tray 2
- Tray 3

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer uses the source tray that supports the selected paper size. For the other options, make sure the correct paper size is loaded in the source tray.

Paper type:

<u>iver</u> for Windows

niversal Prin

Int driv

er a

The **Paper type:** drop-down menu shows a selection of the paper types that the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the product uses the default paper type, which is usually **Plain**.

To view additional supported paper types, select **More** in the **Paper type:** drop-down menu. The **Type** is: box opens. Select one of the additional paper types and click **OK**. Now this option will be available in the **Paper type:** drop-down menu.



The additional supported paper type available via the **Type is:** box are included in the following table.

Paper category	Paper type	Engine speed
Everyday < 96g	Unspecified	• Full
	• Plain	• Full
	HP LaserJet 90g	• 3/4 Speed (6 ppm)

Table 4-10 Paper type: – Type is: supported	paper types and associated engine speeds

Paper category	Ра	per type	En	gine speed
	•	Light 60-74g	•	Full
	•	Bond	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Recycled	•	Full
Presentation 96-130g	•	HP Color Laser Matte 105g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Premium Choice Matte 120g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Presentation Glossy 130g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Tri-fold Color Laser Brochure 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Mid-Weight 96-110g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Heavy 111-130g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Heavy Glossy 111-130g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
			•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
Brochure 131-175g	•	HP Color Laser Brochure Matte 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Superior Laser Matte 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Professional Laser Glossy 130g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Tri-fold Color Laser Brochure 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Color Laser Brochure Glossy 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Superior Laser Glossy 160g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Extra Heavy 131-175g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Extra Heavy Glossy 131-175g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
Photo/Cover	•	HP Cover Matte 200g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
176-200g	•	HP Matte Photo 200g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 200g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Card Glossy 176-220g	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
Other	•	Color Laser Transparency	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Labels	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Letterhead	•	Full
	•	Envelope	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Heavy Envelope	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	•	Preprinted	•	Full
	•	Prepunched	•	Full
	•	Colored	•	Full
	•	Rough	•	3/4 Speed (6 ppm)

Table 4-10 Paper type: - Type is: supported paper types and associated engine speeds (continued)

Paper category	Paper type	Engine speed
	Heavy Rough	• 3/4 Speed (6 ppm)
	HP Tough Paper	• 3/4 Speed (6 ppm)

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom paper types through the driver.

The default setting is **Unspecified**. Before selecting a different setting, make sure that the correct paper type is loaded in the tray that is specified in the **Paper source:** setting.

If the print-driver setting is changed to a paper type that is not currently loaded in the product and the tray is configured for a specific paper type, a control-panel message prompts you to load the paper type or select another tray.

Caution symbols may appear next to some paper types in the selection list. This means that there is another setting that may be in conflict with the selected paper size. For example, if "print on both sides" is selected in the Finishing tab, then the Transparency paper type will have a Caution sign next to it because transparencies can only be printed on a single side.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the Settings button under Special Pages.

Covers

To use specify cover settings, click Covers on the Special Pages window.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following figure shows the **Covers** setting and options.

ecial Pages					?
pecial Pages					
Covers Print pages on differ	ent paper		Add a blank or Front Back Both	preprinted cover:	
NOTE: All pages not listed in th	is table are set to:		Paper source	:	
Paper source:	Automatically Select		Automatically	Select	*
Paper type:	Unspecified		Paper type:		
Print on both sides:	ПĦ		Unspecified		*
Print on both sides:	Off		Unspecified	Add Upda	
Print on both sides: ecial pages defined for th			Unspecified	Add Upda	
		Paper Source	Unspecified Paper Type	Add Upda	
ecial pages defined for th	nis print job:	Paper Source			
ecial pages defined for th	nis print job:	Paper Source			
ecial pages defined for th	nis print job:	Paper Source			
ecial pages defined for th	nis print job:	Paper Source			

The following are the Covers options:

- Cover type. Select which cover is customized: Front, Back, or Both
- Paper source. The Paper Source setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/ or back cover to the document.
- **Paper type.** The **Paper Type** setting specifies the paper size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper Type** setting here override any previous **Paper Type** settings using the same paper source.

NOTE: The Back Cover options are not available when the Booklet Printing Layout setting is enabled on the Finishing tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of paper will be used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative paper type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

ecial Pages				?	
ipecial Pages					
Covers Print pages on different paper			Pages in docun	nent:	
NOTE: All pages not listed in this table are set to:			Paper source:		
Paper source: Automatically Select Paper type: Unspecified Print on both sides: Off			Automatically Select Paper type: Unspecified		
			ecial pages defined for this j	print job:	
Page Type	Pages	Paper Source	Paper Type	Additional Attributes	
Delete	Delete All				

Figure 4-13 Special pages – Print pages on different paper

The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- Pages in document. Select which pages are customized: the First page, or the Last page.
- Paper source. The Paper source setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document.
- **Paper type.** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the paper types that the product supports.

NOTE: The same type of paper is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the paper and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

See Document preview image on page 187 for information about this feature.

Print Quality group box

The **Print Quality** group box provides options that control resolution and digital imaging settings. The group box includes the following options:

- Print Quality drop-down menu
- HP real life technologies (PCL 6 only)
- Remove red eye checkbox (PCL 6 only)
- Gloss Level (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

Figure 4-14 Paper/Quality tab – Print Quality group box

ImageREt 3600	*
IP real life technologies:	
RLT photo fix 'off'	~
🔲 Remove red eye	

Print Quality drop-down menu

The **Print Quality** drop-down menu contains the **Image REt 3600** resolution option. This setting produces 3600 dpi color output quality through HP Image Resolution Enhancement Technology (Image REt) 3600. This setting is selected by default.

HP real life technologies (PCL 6 only)

The HP real life technologies drop-down contains the following options:

• RLT photo fix 'off'

PS Universal Prir

Γ σ

print driv

- 'Basic' RLT photo fix
- 'Full' RLT photo fix

See the following table for more information about configuring this feature.

Table 4-11 HP real life technologies

	RLT photo fix 'off'	'Basic' RLT photo fix	'Full' RLT photo fix
Photo Brightening	Off	Off	Auto
Adaptive Lighting	Off	Off	Auto
Table 4-11 HP real life technologies (continued)

	RLT photo fix 'off'	'Basic' RLT photo fix	'Full' RLT photo fix
SmartFocus	Off	On	On
Sharpness	Off	Low	Auto
Smoothing	Off	Off	Off
-			

Remove red eye checkbox (PCL 6 only)

The **Remove red eye** checkbox is deselected by default. Check this option to reduce or remove red eye from photographs.

Gloss Level (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series is capable of printing exceptionally high gloss levels on a wide range of paper types. However, on some paper types, the gloss level might noticeably decrease from page to page for a particular print job.

The following adjustments can be set by the user in order to maintain exceptionally high gloss level on all printed pages.

Gloss Level driver settings

For users who normally print general office documents where high gloss levels are not critical but need high gloss for particular print jobs. Users can select the appropriate gloss option for their document through the driver

On the **Paper/Quality** tab, the following **Gloss Level** settings are available:

- **Default**. Uses product settings for gloss.
- **Best**. High gloss on all pages.
- **Standard**. Uses the standard gloss setting. This setting provides the fastest print performance, but also produces some gloss variation over time.

Select **Best** for glossy print jobs such as photos or brochures if the gloss finish decreases after the first page is printed. The **Best** setting reduces printing performance on the print job for which it was selected, but it does not impact product performance for other users.

See the *HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series User Guide* for control panel options and further information about maintaining high gloss levels.

Effects tab features

Use the Effects tab to create unique paper effects such as scaling and watermarks.

gure 4-15 Effects tab	ing Preferences ?
	inishing Color Services
• Actual size	E
O Print document on:	
Letter	
Scale to fit	
⊘ % of actual size:	
100	
<	
	Watermarks
	[none]
	First page only
	Edit
42	About Help
	OK Cancel Apply

The Effects tab contains the following controls:

- Resizing Options group box
- Document preview image
- Watermarks group box

Resizing Options group box

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following controls:

- Actual Size (default)
- Print Document On setting

- Scale to Fit option
- % of actual size setting

Figure 4-16 Effects tab – Resizing Options group box

- Resizing Options O Actual size	
O Print document on:	
Letter	*
Scale to fit	
○ % of actual size:	
100	
<	>

Actual Size setting

Actual Size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print Document On setting

Select the **Print Document On** option button to format the document for one paper size and then print the document on a different paper size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new paper size.

The **Print Document On** control is disabled by either of the following conditions:

- The % of actual size value is not 100.
- The Pages per Sheet value (on the Finishing tab) is not 1.

When **Print Document On** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the paper sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard paper sizes that are supported by the selected paper source and any custom sizes that have been created. When **Print Document On** is selected, **Scale to Fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check ox if you do not want the document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected paper.

Scale to Fit option

The **Scale to Fit** option box specifies whether each formatted document page image is scaled to fit the target paper size. By default, **Scale to Fit** is selected when **Print Document On** is selected. If the setting is turned off, then the document page images will not be scaled, and are instead centered at full size on the target paper. If the document size is larger than the target paper size, then the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, then it is centered within the target paper. The following illustration shows

preview images for a document that is formatted for legal-size paper and where the **Print Document On** check box is selected and the target size is specified as **Letter**.





When the size for which the document is formatted (that is, the logical size) differs from the target size, the preview image uses a dashed gray line to show the boundaries of the logical page in relation to the target page size.

% of actual size option

The % of actual size option provides a slider bar to use for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting in the entry box is 100% of normal size. Normal size is defined as the paper size that is selected within the driver or what the driver receives from the software program (if the software program does not negotiate the paper size with the driver). The driver scales the page by the appropriate factor and sends it to the product.

The limits of the range are from 25 to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the Tab key is pressed or another control is selected).

Any change to the scale also changes the page preview, which increases or decreases from the upperleft corner of the preview.

The slider bar controls the scale directly. The value in the edit box changes as the scroll bar indicator is dragged, and the preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the scroll bar arrows increases or decreases the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

An exact value is not achieved by dragging the scroll bar indicator at the default Microsoft Windows resolution; use the scroll bar indicator to approximate the appropriate value, and then use the scroll bar arrows to refine the value.

The following settings disable % of actual size:

- Print document on (on the Effects tab) is selected
- Pages per Sheet (on the Finishing tab) is not 1

Document preview image

See <u>Document preview image on page 187</u> for information about this feature.

Watermarks group box

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a custom watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- (none)
- Confidential
- Draft
- SAMPLE

Figure 4-18 Effects tab – Watermarks group box

[none]	~
First page only	
	Edit

The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system plus the string "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. This is the default setting. Any watermark selected from this list appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. The **First Page Only** check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per Sheet** is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the physical page (one on each logical page).

Click Edit, and the Watermark Details dialog box appears.

Figure 4-19 Ellects tab -	
Watermark Details	? 🛛
Current Watermarks	
New Delete Watermark Message	Font Attributes
[none]	Arial Color:
Message Angle Diagonal Horizontal 	Shading: Very light V Size: Style:
Angle 52 C	80 CRegular

Figure 4-19 Effects tab – Watermark Details box

The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select

a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes made to the previous watermark are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of available watermarks, both the predefined watermarks that are available in the driver and any new watermarks that have been created.

Creating a new watermark

1. Click New.

The new watermark appears in the **Current Watermarks** list and in the **Watermark Message** edit box as "Untitled" until it is named.

2. To name the new watermark, type the selected watermark text in the **Watermark Message** edit box.

The typed name in the Watermark Message field appears in the following locations:

- In the Current Watermarks group box in the Watermark Details dialog box
- In the Watermarks group box on the Effects tab

NOTE: No more that 30 watermarks can exist in the **Current Watermarks** list at one time. When the limit of 30 watermarks is reached, the **New** button is disabled. The **(none)** setting is one of the 30 definable watermarks; the names for the other 29 watermarks can be customized.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list. Changing the **Watermark Message** for that watermark is, in effect, creates a new watermark.

Deleting a watermark

- 1. Select the watermark in the Current Watermarks list.
- 2. Click Delete.
- 3. A warning appears asking whether the intent is to delete the selected item.
 - Click **Cancel** to retain the watermark.
 - Click **OK** to delete the selected watermark.

Watermark message

The **Watermark Message** is also the name that identifies the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list, except when more than one watermark has the same message. For example, several different watermarks can contain the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the string is appended with a space, a pound sign, and a number (for example, **Draft #2**). When a number is added, the number two is used first, but if the resulting name is also in the list, then the number increases until the name is unique (**Draft #3**, **Draft #4**, and so on).

Message angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page; the selection of a particular setting affects only the angle of the string placement. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal**. This is the default setting. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal**. Select this setting to place the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Angle**. Select this setting to place the text at the specified angle across the page. Use the numeric spin box to select the angle.

Font attributes

Use the controls in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The Font Attributes group box contains the following controls:

- Name drop-down menu
- **Color** drop-down menu
- Shading drop-down menu
- Size spin box
- Style drop-down menu

Name drop-down menu

The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

Color drop-down menu

The **Color** drop-down menu provides a fixed, unalterable set of color choices, in palette/color namepair form, for the watermark. The triplet values for these colors are shown in the following table.

Table 4-12	Watermark	color values					
Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
Lightest	255	255	255	232	232	232	255
	255	232	255	255	255	232	232
	255	232	232	232	255	255	255
Very Light	224	255	255	224	224	224	255
	224	224	255	255	255	224	224
	224	224	224	224	255	255	255
Light	192	255	255	192	192	192	255
	192	192	255	255	255	192	192

Setting	Gray	Red	Yellow	Green	Cyan	Blue	Magenta
	192	192	192	192	255	255	255
Med Light	160	255	255	160	160	160	255
	160	160	255	255	255	160	160
	160	160	160	160	255	255	255
Medium	128	255	255	128	128	128	255
	128	128	255	255	255	128	128
	128	128	128	128	255	255	255
Med Dark	96	255	255	96	96	96	255
	96	96	255	255	255	96	96
	96	96	96	96	255	255	255
Dark	64	255	255	64	64	64	255
	64	64	255	255	255	64	64
	64	64	64	64	255	255	255
Very Dark	32	255	255	32	32	32	255
	32	32	255	255	255	32	32
	32	32	32	32	255	255	255
Darkest	0	255	255	0	0	0	255
	0	0	255	255	255	0	0
	0	0	0	0	255	255	255

Table 4-12 Watermark color values (continued)

Shading drop-down menu

The default **Shading** setting for new and preset watermarks is **Very Light**. The following range of shades is available from the **Shading** drop-down menu.

- Lightest
- Very Light (default)
- Light
- Medium Light
- Medium
- Medium Dark
- Dark
- Very Dark
- Darkest

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. A choice of **Light** produces a lightly saturated gray watermark. A choice of **Lightest** produces the lightest shade of watermark; **Darkest** produces a black watermark.

Size spin box

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available from the **Size** menu. The default point size is languagedependent. The choice of **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic** is available from the **Style** drop-down menu.

Style drop-down menu

The **Style** drop-down menu has the following setting choices: **Regular**, **Bold**, **Italic**, and **Bold Italic**. The **Regular** setting is the default for new and preset watermarks.

Default settings

The default settings for new watermarks are **Arial** font, **Gray** color, **Very Light** shading, **80** points, and **Regular** style. The default settings for preset watermarks are **Arial** font, **Very Light** shading, and **Bold** style. The default point size for preset watermarks is language-dependent, and varies.

Finishing tab features

Use the Finishing tab to print booklets and control the paper output.

ion
trait
dscape
ate by 180 degrees

The Finishing tab contains the following controls:

- Document Options
- Document preview image
- Orientation group box

Document Options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following controls.

- Print on Both Sides or Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box
- Flip Pages Up option
- Booklet Layout drop-down menu
- Pages per Sheet drop-down menu

- Print Page Borders check box
- Page Order drop-down menu

Figure 4-21 Finishing tab – Document Options group box

~	Booklet layout: Dff es per sheet:
	es per sheet:
	ba per aneet.
*	age per sheet
	Print page borders
	'age order:
~	Right, then Down
~	Print page borders age order:

Print on Both Sides check box

NOTE: This feature is called **Print on Both Sides (manually)** for the HP Color LaserJet CP2025n because this model does not include an automatic duplex unit. For all other product models, this feature is called **Print on Both Sides**.

The **Print on Both Sides** option controls the manual duplexing function of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Print on both sides automatically

The duplexing unit in the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job. The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series product comes with a duplexing unit installed in the following models:

- HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn
- HP Color LaserJet CP2025x

These product models support smart duplexing. The smart duplexing feature increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit even when the duplexing feature has been selected in the driver.

All paper types support the smart duplexing feature, except for paper types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following paper types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the paper type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product needs to make adjustments to its print modes. When you select a paper type, you are, in effect, instructing the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with

the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Manually printing on both sides

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the paper for the HP Color LaserJet CP2025n printer. The HP Color LaserJet CP2025n printer does not have automatic duplexing capability. **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** will also be enabled for the HP Color LaserJet CP2025dn and the HP Color LaserJet CP2025x printers when a paper type is selected that cannot be auto-duplexed.

Make sure to select the correct paper type as selecting a paper type instructs the product to use a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to print the paper with the best possible quality. This group of settings is known as print mode. To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the product makes adjustments to its print modes. A different print mode is used with each paper type. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

The following paper types cannot be manually duplexed using the **Print on both sides (Manually)** feature:

- HP Color Laser Photo Glossy 220g
- Labels
- Envelope
- Heavy Envelope
- Color Laser Transparency

A triangle enclosing an exclamation point icon appears next to the **Color Laser Transparency**, **Envelope**, **Heavy Envelope**, and **Labels** options. This icon indicates that duplex printing is not advised for these paper types.

To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, enable the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab in the **Properties** print-driver tabs.

1. In Windows Vista, click Computer, click Control Panel, and then click Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click **Properties**.
- 4. Click **Device Settings** tab.
- 5. Look for the *Installable Options* section at the bottom of **Device Settings** screen. Select "Enabled" for the "Allow Manual Duplexing" option.

When the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box is available on the **Document Options** section of the **Finishing** tab screen, follow these steps to make the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer manually print on both sides.

- 1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
- 2. Click OK.
- 3. Click Print. The even-number pages of the document print.
- Insert the stack of even-number pages that just printed when the control panel shows the Manually Feed message (or it shows the Load Tray message), insert the stack of paper (on which the evennumbered pages have been printed).

Figure 4-22 Finishing tab – Print on Both Sides instruction windodw



- 5. Click the **OK** button on the product control panel.
- 6. The odd numbered pages print on the second side (blank) of the stacked sheets.

Flip Pages Up option

Select the **Flip Pages Up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. (The **Flip Pages Up** option is only available when **Print on Both Sides** is selected.) By default, the **Flip Pages Up** check box is *not* selected. The following table shows the results of selecting this box, depending on the paper orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-13	Page	orientation
------------	------	-------------

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-side binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout drop-down menu

The **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, visible when **Print on Both Sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current paper size. The default setting for the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu is **Off**.

- Left Binding
- Right Binding

By selecting **Left Binding** or **Right Binding**, the document preview image changes to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per Sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. Manually changing the **Pages per Sheet** setting to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet disables the booklet setting. See the <u>Printing a booklet on page 210</u> section of this chapter for more information.

Book and booklet printing

A book is a print job consisting of at least two pages that can have a different paper type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the **Front Cover**, **First Page**, **Other Pages**, **Last Page**, and **Back Cover** settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab (available by selecting the **Use Different Paper/Covers** check box) to select different paper for these pages.

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the paper type. Use the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Printing a booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet.

- 1. In the **Finishing** tab, select the **Print on Both Sides** check box.
- 2. In the **Booklet Layout** drop-down menu, select the preferred type of booklet printing (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
- 3. Click **OK** in the print driver.
- 4. Click **OK** in the **Print** dialog box to print.

Printing a book

To print a book in which the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover are printed on different paper types, see the <u>Paper/Quality tab features on page 188</u> section of this chapter.

Pages per Sheet drop-down menu

On the **Finishing** tab, use the **Pages per Sheet** option to select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper. If more than one page per sheet is selected, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per Sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- 1 page per sheet (this is the default)
- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

NOTE: Selecting an option other than **2 pages per sheet** makes booklet printing unavailable.

Print Page Borders check box

Related controls indented beneath the **Pages per Sheet** edit box are **Print Page Borders** and **Page Order**, which become active when **Pages per Sheet** is greater than 1.

Print Page Borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

Page Order drop-down menu

The Page Order drop-down menu contains four selections:

- Right, then Down
- Down, then Right
- Left, then Down
- Down, then Left

The document preview image reflects any changes made in the **Page Order** settings. The following figure shows the different document preview configurations.

Figure 4-23 Page-order preview image



- 2 pages per sheet
- 4 pages per sheet
- 6 pages per sheet
- 9 pages per sheet
- 16 pages per sheet

Document preview image

See <u>Document preview image on page 187</u> for information about this feature.

Orientation group box

Use the **Orientation** setting to establish different layouts of the image on the page. This setting does not affect the way that paper feeds into the product.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- Portrait option button
- Landscape option button
- Rotate by 180 degrees check box
- Mirror Image check box (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

Figure 4-24 Finishing tab – Orientation group box

Urientation	
 Portrait 	
🔘 Landscape	
Rotate by 180 degrees	

Portrait option button

Select this feature to print the document in **Portrait** orientation, which is when the top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the paper. This is the default setting.

Landscape option button

Select this feature to print the document in **Landscape** orientation, which is when the top edge of the document is the longer edge of the paper.

Rotate by 180 degrees check box

Select this feature to rotate the document image on the paper 180°. For example: If the return address on an envelope is smudged, select this setting and then feed the envelope into the product so the return address area goes in first.

Mirror Image check box (HP PS Universal Print Driver only)

Click the Mirror Image check box to reverse the horizontal coordinates of the printed document.

Color tab features

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale.

The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-25 Color tab			
💩 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series PCL 6 Printing Pr	eferen	ces	? 🗙
Advanced Printing Shortcuts Paper/Quality Effects Finishing Color Options Automatic Manual Settings Print in Grayscale Color Themes		Services	
RGB color:			
Default (sRGB)			
		About	elp
	(OK Cancel	Apply

The Color tab contains the following sets of controls:

- <u>Color Options</u>
- Color Themes
- <u>Document preview image</u>

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- Automatic option (default)
- Manual option

- Settings button (that opens the Color Settings dialog box)
- Print in Grayscale check box

Figure 4-26 Color tab – Color Options group box

Olor Options	
🔘 Manual	Settings
Print in Grayscale	

Automatic

The **Automatic** color adjustment option optimizes the neutral-gray color treatment, halftones, and edge enhancements for each element in a document. For more information, see your print driver online Help.

NOTE: Automatic is the default setting and is recommended for printing all color documents.

Manual

Use the **Manual** color adjustment option to adjust the neutral-gray color treatment, halftones, and edge enhancements for text, graphics, and photographs. To gain access to the manual color options, from the **Color** tab, select **Manual**, and then select **Settings**.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.



Figure 4-27 Color tab – Color Settings dialog box

Use manual color options to adjust the **Neutral Grays**, **Halftone**, and **Edge Control** options for text, graphics, and photographs.

Table 4-14 Manual color options

Setting description	Set	Setting options			
Halftone Halftone options affect the color output resolution and clarity.	•	Smooth (2-bits/pixel) provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas and enhances photographs by smoothing color gradations. Select this option when uniform and smooth area fills are the top priority.			
		 Cyan – 155 lines per inch (lpi) 			
		∘ Magenta – 155 lpi			
		• Yellow – 212 lpi			
		 Black – 155 lpi 			
		Detail is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Select this option when sharp edges and details are the top priority.			
		∘ Cyan – 190 lpi			
		 Magenta – 190 lpi 			
		• Yellow – 200 lpi			
		• Black – 212 lpi			
The Neutral Grays setting determines the method for		 Black Only generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This guarantees neutral colors without a color cast. 			
creating gray colors used in text, graphics, and photographs.	•	 4-Color generates neutral colors (grays and black) by combining all four toner colors. This method produces smoother gradients and transitions to other colors, and it produces the darkest black 			
Edge Control		Maximum is the most aggressive trapping setting. Adaptive			
The Edge Control setting determines how edges are rendered. Edge control has two components: adaptive halftoning and trapping. Adaptive halftoning		halftoning is on.			
	•	Normal sets trapping at a medium level. Adaptive halftoning is on.			
increases edge sharpness. Trapping reduces the effect of color-plane misregistration by overlapping the edges of adjacent objects slightly.		Light sets trapping at a minimal level, Adaptive halftoning is on.			
		Off turns off both trapping and adaptive halftoning.			

Print in Grayscale

The **Print in Grayscale** option converts all colors to gray and forces the product to use only the black print cartridge.

Color Themes

The **Color Themes** group box contains the **RGB color:** drop-down menu.

Figure 4-28 Color tab – Color Themes group box



Use color themes to adjust the **RGB Color** options for the entire page.

For information about Advanced Color settings, see <u>Advanced color use on page 27</u> and <u>HP Basic Color</u> <u>Match tool on page 30</u>.

Setting description	Setting options
RGB Color	 Default (sRGB) instructs the product to interpret RGB color as sRGB. The sRGB standard is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (<u>http://www.w3.org</u>).
	 Vivid instructs the product to increase the color saturation in the midtones. Less colorful objects are rendered more colorfully. This setting is recommended for printing business graphics.
	 Photo interprets RGB color as if it were printed as a photograph using a digital mini-lab. It renders deeper, more saturated colors differently than Default (sRGB) mode. Use this setting for printing photos.
	 Photo (AdobeRGB 1998) is for digital photos that use the AdobeRGB color space rather than sRGB. When printing from a professional software program that uses AdobeRGB, it is important to turn off the color management in the software program and allow the product to manage the color space.
	 None sets the product to print RGB data in raw device mode. To render photographs correctly when this option is selected, you must manage color in the program in which you are working or in the operating system.
	CAUTION: Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or the operating system; otherwise, color quality can be compromised.

Document preview image

See <u>Document preview image on page 187</u> for information about this feature.

Services tab features

Use the **Services** tab to access basic service information for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer. Connect to the Internet before selecting an option and clicking **Go**.

The Services tab is shown in the following figure.



The Services tab contains the following Internet Services feature.

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- Support and troubleshooting. Opens the product page for the HP Business Center.
- Product manuals. Opens a Web page to view or download HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Checks the print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-todate print drivers are installed.
- **Shop for supplies.** Opens the HP SureSupply Web page and shop online for HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supplies.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device Settings tab features

On the Printer Properties tab set, only the **Device Settings** tab and **About** tab are unique to the product; all other tabs are part of the operating system.

The **Device Settings** tab is in the Properties window for the print driver. To gain access to the Device Settings tab, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click Computer, click Control Panel, and then click Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click Properties.
- 4. Click the Device Settings tab.

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for paper-handling products and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

Available options depend on the driver and the particular feature.

The following figure shows the Device Settings tab for the HP PCL 6.

Figure 4-30 Device Settings tab – PCL 6



HP PCL 6 print driver and HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows

The following figures shows the **Device Settings** tab for the HP PS Universal Print Driver.



Figure 4-31 Device Settings tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver(1 of 2)

Figure 4-32 Device Settings tab – HP PS Universal Print Driver(2 of 2)



The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- Form to Tray Assignment
- Font Substitution Table
- External Fonts
- Installable Options
- HP PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings

Form to Tray Assignment

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the paper size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are

available in the paper-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the product with paper-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as paper sources on the Paper/Quality tab.

Configuring the trays

- 1. Select the appropriate tray in the Form to Tray Assignment list.
- 2. Use the drop-down menu to select the paper size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
- **3.** Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
- 4. Click **OK** to enable the settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-product font mappings.

Figure 4-33 Font Substitution Table



External Fonts

NOTE: The External Fonts option is available only in the HP PCL 6 print driver. It is not available in the HP PS Universal Print Driver.

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the product. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-34 HP Font Installer dialog box

HP Font Installer	
Printer Font File Location:	
	Browse
Font(s) to be Added:	Installed Font(s):
	Add >>
ОК	Cancel

Topics:

- Installing external fonts
- Removing external fonts

Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

- 1. Click Start.
- 2. Select Settings.
- Click Printers (Microsoft Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes (Microsoft Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Microsoft Windows XP Home) or Hardware and Sound (Windows Vista).
- 4. Right-click the name of the product.
- 5. Click Properties.
- 6. Click the Device Settings tab.
- 7. Click the External Fonts option. The Properties button appears.
- 8. Click Properties. The HP Font Installer dialog box appears.
- 9. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.
- 10. Select the fonts to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
- 11. Click OK to close the HP Font Installer dialog box.

Removing external fonts

- 1. Click Start.
- 2. Select Settings.

- Click Printers (Microsoft Windows 2000) or Printers and Faxes (Microsoft Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or Printers and Other Hardware Devices (Microsoft Windows XP Home) or Hardware and Sound (Windows Vista).
- 4. Right-click the name of the product.
- 5. Click Properties.
- 6. Click the Device Settings tab.
- 7. Click the External Fonts option. The Properties button appears.
- 8. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
- 9. Select the fonts to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
- 10. Click OK to close the HP Font Installer dialog box.

Installable Options

- Allow Manual Duplexing
- Printer Memory

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to print on both sides of any size and most types of paper (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels). To use this feature, reinsert the paper stack into the input tray to print the second side. The product pauses while the user makes this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default. For more information about this feature, see <u>Manually printing on both</u> sides on page 208.

Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the product. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the product can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the product memory.

HP PS Universal Print Driver Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear only in the PS Emulation **Device Settings** tab:

- Available PostScript Memory
- Output Protocol
- Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job
- Send Ctrl-D After Each Job
- <u>Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray</u>
- <u>Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray</u>
- Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts
- Job Timeout

- Wait Timeout
- <u>Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline</u>
- Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap
- Postscript Passthrough
- JPEG Passthrough

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available postscript memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available postscript memory is a subset of the product's total physical memory. It is usually best to set the postscript memory to match the total RAM that appears on the configuration page.

To print a configuration page from the product control panel, follow these steps:

- 1. Press **OK** to open the menus.
- 2. Press the Left arrow or Right arrow button to navigate to Main menu/Reports. Press OK.
- 3. Press the Left arrow or Right arrow button to navigate to Reports/Config report. Press OK to print the configuration report.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the product uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- ASCII (default)
- TBCP
- Binary

Click **ASCII** to send data in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial or network port.

Click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol) to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Click **Binary** to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the product is reset at the beginning of every postscript document. The default setting is **No**. Pressing Ctrl-D resets the product to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Using Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a product connected through serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the product is reset at the end of every postscript document. The default setting is **Yes**. Pressing Ctrl-D resets the product to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are

not affected by the current print job. Using Ctrl-D might cause a print job to fail if the product is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a network product, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in text to the gray that the driver provides. The following settings are available:

- Yes
- No (default)

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in graphics to the gray provided by the driver. The following settings are available:

Yes

• No (default)

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This control specifies whether to add the euro symbol to the printer fonts. The following settings are available:

- Yes (default)
- No

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the product before the product stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the product waits to get more postscript information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the product stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. When printing a very complicated document, increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the product waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. Any font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. Any font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline

(Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **600 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Postscript Passthrough

Postscript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. Postscript passthrough provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a postscript driver. Options such as **Watermarks**, **Pages per sheet** and **Booklet Printing** might not print correctly from some software programs with **Postscript Passthrough** enabled, because such programs send postscript information that the driver cannot control. Other programs might print using these options without problems. Select **Disabled** and print the document again if you encounter problems.

NOTE: In some cases, disabling **Postscript Passthrough** can cause unexpected results within a software program.

JPEG Passthrough

The JPEG Passthrough setting contains the following options:

- **Disable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as bitmaps, resulting in faster printing.
- **Enable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as JPEG (JPEG passthrough).
- **Auto.** (This is the default.) When this option is selected, the product connection type is automatically detected. For network (TCP/IP) connections, JPEG passthrough is disabled. For USB connections, JPEG passthrough is enabled.

About tab features

On the Print Properties tab set, only the **Device Settings** tab and **About** tab are unique to the product; all other tabs are part of the operating system.

The About tab is in the Properties for the print driver.

To gain access to the About tab, follow these steps:

1. In Windows Vista, click Computer, click Control Panel, and then click Hardware and Sound.

In Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**.

-or-

In Windows XP Home, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then double-click the **Printers and Other Hardware** icon.

-or-

For Windows 2000: Select Settings, and then click Printers.

- 2. Right-click the product icon.
- 3. Click Properties.
- 4. Click the About tab.

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the driver. It contains an overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-35 About tab



HP PCL 6 print driver an HP PS Universal Print Driver for Windows

The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD number (in the Driver Files: field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

5 Macintosh Software and Utilities

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer comes with printing software and installers for Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh operating systems.

- Supported operating systems for Macintosh
- Supported software components for Macintosh
- Software component availability for Macintosh
- Printing-system software
- Macintosh installation instructions
- Supported utilities for Macintosh
- Use features in the Macintosh printer driver
- Macintosh readme

Supported operating systems for Macintosh

- Mac OS X v10.4 and v10.5 are supported.
- Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X classic are not supported.

Macintosh system requirements

Hardware requirements

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5 or Intel Core processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 32 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

Supported print drivers for Macintosh

The HP installer provides PostScript[®] Print Description (PPD) files, Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs), and the HP EWS Gateway which allows access to the product's embedded web server.

The PPDs, in combination with the Apple PostScript print drivers, provide access to product features.

Change print-driver settings for Macintosh

Follow these steps to change the print-driver settings for Macintosh.

Table 5-1 Change print-driver settings for Macintosh

	• •		-		
Change the settings for all print jobs until the software program is closed		Change the default settings for all print jobs		Change the product configuration settings	
1.	On the File menu, click Print.	1.	On the File menu, click Print.	Мас	c OS X V10.4
2.	Change the settings that you want on the various menus.	2.	Change the settings that you want on the various menus.	1.	From the Apple menu, click System Preferences , and then click Print & Fax .
		3.	On the Presets menu, click Save As and type a name for the preset.	2.	Click Printer Setup.
			se settings are saved in the Presets	3.	Click the Installable Options menu
			menu. To use the new settings, you must select the saved preset option every time	Мас	c OS X V10.5
		you	open a program and print.	1.	From the Apple menu, click System Preferences , and then click Print & Fax .
				2.	Click Options & Supplies.
				3.	Click the Driver menu.
				4.	Select the driver from the list, and configure the installed options.

Supported software components for Macintosh

• Software components for Macintosh

Software components for Macintosh

Table 5-2 Software components for Macintosh

Component	Description	
Installer software	Installs all of the printing-system software.	
Driver software	Allows printing with the computer and the product. This software includes the following components: • The PostScript Printer Description (PPD) file for printing	
	through PostScript Level 3 emulation	
HP EWS proxy Utility	Allows user to configure the product via a Web browser.	
Documentation	The user documentation for this product is included on the installation CD in Adobe Acrobat .PDF format.	

Software component availability for Macintosh

Table 5-3 Software component availability for Macintosh

Component	Macintosh
Drivers	
Mac PostScript Printer Description PPD	X
Installers	
Macintosh Installer for OS X	X
Documentation	
HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer User Guide	X
Other	
HP EWS Gateway	X
Printing-system software

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software for Macintosh is composed of an HPcreated postscript printer definition file (PPD) and a printer dialog extension (PDE) file that work together with the Macintosh OS print system. These files are used by the Macintosh OS print system to determine default print settings and also allows the user to select between the various print options and settings and are installed by the provided HP LaserJet Installer. Additionally, an HP-supplied Macintosh printer configuration utility is provided, which allows the user to access the product's embedded Web server (EWS) to allow for additional configuration and product status monitoring. The following are provided on the installation CD:

- The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh
- Install notes (Readme file)

The following major components are installed by the HP LaserJet Installer for Mac:

- HP Color LaserJet CP2025 PPD
- HP Color LaserJet CP2025 PDE
- HP EWS Gateway

Topics:

<u>Availability</u>

Availability

This document provides information about the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.

Topics:

- Printing-system software on the Web
- In-box printing-system software CDs

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

NOTE: This document describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

Topics:

Printing-system software

Printing-system software

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

In-box printing-system software CDs

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

Topics:

- Macintosh partition
- <u>CD versions</u>

Macintosh partition

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD is divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- MS Windows
- Macintosh

The HP Macintosh printing-system software files all reside in the Macintosh partition. The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh is at the root of the Macintosh CD Partition. The user manuals (in PDF format) are grouped by language and are in the Manuals directory on the Macintosh partition of the printing-system software CD.

CD versions

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD is available in three versions, each of which contains printing-system software in the following languages:

- English
- Danish
- Dutch
- Finnish
- French
- German
- Italian
- Japanese
- Norwegian
- Swedish
- Spanish
- Portuguese
- Russian

- Simplified Chinese
- Traditional Chinese
- Korean

Macintosh installation instructions

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. This document provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- Macintosh component descriptions
- Install the Macintosh printing system

Macintosh component descriptions

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- HP LaserJet PPDs
- <u>PDEs</u>
- HP EWS Gateway
- Install notes (Readme file)

HP LaserJet PPDs

In Mac OS X V10.3.9 or later, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/ Resources:**https://www.estimate.com (ang) is the appropriate localized folder.

The PPDs, in combination with the driver, provide access to the product configuration settings and installable options. These settings are usually configured during the installation process by using Apple Mac OS X tools such as Print Center, Printer Setup Utility, and Print & Fax. For more information, see Table 5-4 Adding a printer in Macintosh operating systems on page 237.

PDEs

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins (for Mac OS X V10.3.9 or later only) that provide access to product features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings.

HP EWS Gateway

Mac OS X supports the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). Use the HP EWS Gateway to open the HP EWS for the product. Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- View the product status and change product settings.
- View and change network settings for the product.
- Print information pages for the product.
- View the product event log.

The HP EWS is accessed by using a Web browser such as Safari. The HP EWS Gateway software allows the Web browser access to the product if the product is connected via USB or network. The HP EWS can also by opened by choosing the **Utility** button in the Macintosh Print Center or Printer Setup Utility.

Install notes (Readme file)

This .HTML file contains information about basic product installation and OS support.

Install the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh computer, the installation procedures are basically the same for a network administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has access rights to the product. The computer user must also have administrative rights on the computer in order to install the software.

Topics:

- General installation for Macintosh operating systems
- Detailed Mac OS X installation
- Printer setup

General installation for Macintosh operating systems

- 1. If you are connecting the product to a network, connect the network cable to the product network port. If you are connecting the product to a computer using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.
- 2. Insert the Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
- NOTE: If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.
- 3. Double-click the hpclj CP2020 Series v... app icon.
- NOTE: The Continue button appears only after you type the "admin" password in the Authenticate dialog.
- The main **Installer** dialog appears. Click **Install** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.
- NOTE: When you are installing the printing-system software, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.
- 5. When software installation is complete, click **Quit**.
- 6. Continue with the steps for setting up a printer.

The software program that you use to finish setting up the product varies by operating system. The following table shows the print setup tools that are available.

Table 5-4 Adding a printer in Macintosh operating systems

Operating System	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax	
Mac OS X V10.4		х	х	
Mac OS X V10.5			x	

Detailed Mac OS X installation

Topics:

• Main Install dialog sequence

Main Install dialog sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog-box sequence.

- NOTE: If you are installing the product using a network connection, you can connect the product to the network before installing the software, but if you are installing the product using a USB connection, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.
 - 1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.
 - 2. If the CD screen does not open automatically when the CD is put into the CD-ROM drive, doubleclick the **HP LaserJet CP2020 Series** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the installer folder.

Figure 5-1 HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series CD-ROM icon



The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series dialog opens.



In the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series software screen, double-click the hpclj CP2020Series v... app icon. This begins the install process.

The Authenticate dialog appears.

Figure 5-3	Authenticate	dialog
------------	--------------	--------

Authenticate		
hplj CP2020 v7.7.0.751 requires tha your password.	t you type	
Name: staffhome		
Password:		
Details		
? Cancel	ОК	

F

- **4.** Type the correct "admin" name and password and click **OK** to continue.
 - **NOTE:** Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.
- 5. The License Agreement dialog opens.

Click Continue.

Figure 5-4 License Agreement

0 0	hplj CP2020 v7.7.0.751
	License
🖯 License	End User License Agreement
Installing	PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS SOFTWARE PRODUCT This End-User License Agreement ("EUAT) is a contract between (a) you (either an individual or the entity you represent) and (b) Hewleit-Packard Company ("HP") that governs your use of the software product ("Software"). This EULA does not apply if there is a separate license agreement between you and HP or its suppliers for the Software, including a license agreement in online documentation. The term "Software" may include (i) associated media, (ii) a user guide and other printed materials, and (iii) "online" or electronic documentation (collective)" User Documentation").
	RIGHTS IN THE SOFTWARE ARE OFFERED ONLY ON THE CONDITION THAT YOU AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS EULA. BY INSTALLING, COPYING, DOWNLOADING, OR OTHERWISE USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THIS EULA, IF YOU NOT ACCEPT THIS EULA, DO NOT INSTALL, DOWNLOAD, ON OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE. IF YOU PURCHASED THE SOFTWARE BY DO NOT AGREE TO THIS EULA, PLEASER ETLING THE SOFTWARE TO YOU RPLACE OF PURCHASE WITHIN TOURTEEN DAYS FOR A REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE; IF THE SOFTWARE IS INSTALLED ON OR MADE AVAILABLE WITH ANOTHER HP PRODUCT, YOU MAY RETURN THE ENTRE UNUSED PRODUCT.
	1. THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE. The Software may include, in addition to
	Print Save Go Back Continue

6. The Agree or Disagree dialog opens.

Click Agree to continue.



7. The Installing dialog opens indicating the progress of the install. Wait for the install to complete.

	instaining
License	
🖯 Installing	
	Items remaining to be installed: 12
	Items remaining to be installed: 13
	Installing: HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series.icns
	Installation powered by VISE X
	Stop

8. The Connect USB now dialog opens.

If you are installing the product via the network, click **OK** to continue.

If you are installing the product via direct connect, connect the USB cable, then click **OK**.

Figure 5-7	Connect US	3 Now o	dialog
------------	------------	---------	--------

000		hplj CP2020 v7.7.0.751	
⊖ License ⊖ Installing	c c	you are using a USB cable, please connect the USB able to both the device and the computer at this me.	
		ОК	
		Items remaining to be installed: 0	
		Installation powered by VISE X	Stop

9. The Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Install Notes dialog opens.

Figure 5-8 Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Install Notes				
0	0		HP LaserJet	0
	÷- (2 😣 🏠 🛛	\varTheta file://localhost/Volumes/HP%20LaserJet%20CP2020%20Si ▼ 🕨 🕼 Google	Q *
Getting	Started	Latest Headline	s <mark>ଲ</mark> Apple .Mac Amazon eBay Yahoo! News▼	
0	F	IP LaserJet	8	
Mac C	OS X pri	inter queue s	setup for your HP LaserJet printer:	1
After o	complet	ing the softwa	are installation, perform the following steps to complete your printer setup:	
I. C	onnect	your USB or I	Ethernet LAN cable to your product. Turn on the product.	
2. O	pen the	document to	print, and then choose File > Print.	
3. C	hoose A	Add Printer fro	om the bottom of the Printer pop-up menu list.	
fcon	necting	i to a USB or	r local networked attached product:	
4. S	,		m the Default Browser list if the product is connected locally on the network acted by a USB cable.	
lf con	necting	, to an IP Pri	nter or to a product on a different network subnet:	
5. S	elect the	e IP Printer op	otion.	
Done	-	Ob	innet Contration of a Destandary in an and	

The installation is complete. Continue to printer setup.

Printer setup

After installing the printing-system software in Macintosh operating systems, the product must be set up.

Topics:

- Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4
- <u>Troubleshooting Notes</u>

Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4

After the software installation, perform the following steps to complete your printer setup:

- 1. Connect your USB or Ethernet LAN cable to your product. Turn on the product.
- 2. Open a document to print, click File, and then click Print.
- 3. Choose Add Printer from the bottom of the Printer pop-up menu list.
- 4. If connecting to a USB or local networked attached product:

Select your product from the Default Browser list if the product is connected locally on the network (Bonjour) or if connected by a USB cable.

- 5. If connecting to an IP Printer or to a product on a different network subnet, select the IP Printer option.
 - **a.** Choose JetDirect Socket from the Protocol pop-up menu.
 - b. Print a Configuration Report using the product control panel and locate the IP address.
 - c. Type the IP address for the printer in the Address field.
- 6. The correct print driver should automatically be selected.
- 7. Click ADD to create the Printer queue

Troubleshooting Notes

• **Problem:** "I do not see my printer in the Printer Browser list."

Solution: If the printer name does not display in the Printer List, try one or more of the following:

- For the cable being used (USB or Network), check that it is properly connected to the printer and the connecting device (hub or computer).
- Check that the product is powered on.
- Restart the computer and/or the product.
- The printer may reside on a different network subnet. If this is the case, you must setup the product using the IP Printer option. If more than one product of the same model type is connected to the local Network, select your product using the name that matches the Bonjour Service name found on the product's Network Report Page. Print a Network report page using the product's control panel display to verify.
- Problem: "The Generic Postscript Printer driver is automatically selected."

Solution: If the Generic Postscript Printer driver was automatically selected, try one or more of the following:

- **1.** If using USB, manually delete the product from the Printer list then power cycle the product. The product should be added automatically with the correct printer driver.
- 2. Manually search for the correct printer driver for your product in the Print Using pull down menu in the Print Browser dialog.
- **3.** If your printer driver cannot be found in the pull down list, try rebooting your computer.

- **4.** Re-install the printer software.
- 5. Open Disk Utility, select your Mac OS X startup volume, click First Aid, and then click Repair Disk Permissions.

Supported utilities for Macintosh

HP EWS Gateway

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) Gateway is a utility that gives users access to the HP EWS for the product. The HP EWS is a Web server utility that allows users to control settings on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer through the Web browser.

For more information about the HP EWS, see <u>HP Embedded Web Server on page 86</u>.

Use features in the Macintosh printer driver

Create and use printing presets in Macintosh

Use printing presets to save the current printer driver settings for reuse.

Create a printing preset

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Select the driver.
- **3.** Select the print settings.
- 4. In the **Presets** box, click **Save As...**, and type a name for the preset.
- 5. Click OK.

Use printing presets

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Select the driver.
- 3. In the **Presets** box, select the printing preset that you want to use.
- **NOTE:** To use printer-driver default settings, select **Factory Default**.

Resize documents or print on a custom paper size

You can scale a document to fit on a different size of paper.

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Open the Paper Handling menu.
- 3. In the area for **Destination Paper Size**, select **Scale to fit paper size**, and then select the size from the drop-down list.
- 4. If you want to use only paper that is smaller than the document, select **Scale down only**.

Use watermarks

A watermark is a notice, such as "Confidential," that is printed in the background of each page of a document.

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Open the Watermarks menu.
- Next to Mode, select the type of watermark to use. Select Watermark to print a semi-transparent message. Select Overlay to print a message that is not transparent.
- 4. Next to **Pages**, select whether to print the watermark on all pages or on the first page only.

- 5. Next to **Text**, select one of the standard messages, or select **Custom** and type a new message in the box.
- 6. Select options for the remaining settings.

Print multiple pages on one sheet of paper in Macintosh

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft pages.

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Select the driver.
- 3. Open the **Layout** menu.
- **4.** Next to **Pages per Sheet**, select the number of pages that you want to print on each sheet (1, 2, 4, 6, 9, or 16).
- 5. Next to Layout Direction, select the order and placement of the pages on the sheet.
- 6. Next to **Borders**, select the type of border to print around each page on the sheet.

Print on both sides of the page (duplex printing)

Use automatic duplex printing

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.
- 2. On the File menu, click Print.
- 3. Open the Layout menu.
- 4. Next to Two-Sided, select either Long-Edge Binding or Short-Edge Binding.
- 5. Click Print.

Print on both sides manually

- 1. Insert enough paper into one of the trays to accommodate the print job. If you are loading special paper such as letterhead, load it in one of the following ways:
 - For tray 1, load the letterhead paper face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first.
 - For all other trays, load the letterhead paper face-down with the top edge at the back of the tray.
 - \triangle CAUTION: To avoid jams, do not load paper that is heavier than 105 g/m² (28-lb bond).
- 2. On the File menu, click Print.
- 3. On the Finishing menu, click the Manual Duplex tab.

- 4. Click the check box next to **Manual Duplex**.
- 5. Click **Print**. Follow the instructions in the pop-up window that appears on the computer screen before replacing the output stack in tray 1 for printing the second half.
- 6. Go to the printer, and remove any blank paper that is in tray 1.
- 7. Insert the printed stack face-up with the bottom edge feeding into the printer first in tray 1. You *must* print the second side from tray 1.
- 8. If prompted, press the appropriate control panel button to continue.

Use the Services menu

If the product is connected to a network, use the **Services** menu to obtain product and supply-status information.

- 1. On the File menu, click Print.
- 2. Open the Services menu.
- 3. To open the embedded Web server and perform a maintenance task, do the following:
 - a. Select Device Maintenance.
 - **b.** Select a task from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click Launch.
- 4. To go to various support Web sites for this device, do the following:
 - a. Select Services on the Web.
 - b. Select Internet Services, and select an option from the drop-down list.
 - c. Click Go!.

Macintosh readme

The Macintosh readme contains the following topics:

- Mac OS X printer queue setup for your HP LaserJet printer
- <u>Troubleshooting Notes</u>

Mac OS X printer queue setup for your HP LaserJet printer

After completing the software installation, perform the following steps to complete your printer setup:

- 1. Connect your USB or Ethernet LAN cable to your product. Turn on the product.
- 2. Open the document to print, and then choose File > Print.
- 3. Choose Add Printer from the bottom of the Printer pop-up menu list. If connecting to a USB or local networked attached product:
- 4. Select your product from the Default Browser list if the product is connected locally on the network (Bonjour) or if connected by a USB cable. If connecting to an IP Printer or to a product on a different network subnet:
- 5. Select the IP Printer option.
 - a. Choose Jetdirect Socket from the Protocol pop-up menu.
 - **b.** Print a Configuration Report using the product's control panel display and locate the IP address.
 - c. Type the IP address for the printer in the Address field.
- 6. The correct print driver should automatically be selected.
- 7. Click Add to create the Printer queue.

Troubleshooting Notes

• Problem: "I do not see my printer in the Printer Browser list."

Solution: If the printer name does not display in the Printer List, try one or more of the following:

- For the cable being used (USB or Network), check that it is properly connected to the printer and the connecting device (hub or computer).
- Check that the product is powered on.
- Restart the computer and/or the product.
- The printer may reside on a different network subnet. If this is the case, you must setup the product using the IP Printer option. If more than one product of the same model type is connected to the local Network, select your product using the name that matches the Bonjour Service name found on the product's Network Report Page. Print a Network report page using the product's control panel display to verify.
- Problem: "The Generic Postscript Printer driver is automatically selected."

Solution: If the Generic Postscript Printer driver was automatically selected, try one or more of the following:

- **1.** If using USB, manually delete the product from the Printer list then power cycle the product. The product should be added automatically with the correct printer driver.
- **2.** Manually search for the correct printer driver for your product in the Print Using pull down menu in the Print Browser dialog.
- **3.** If your printer driver cannot be found in the pull down list, try rebooting your computer.
- 4. Re-install the printer software.
- 5. Open Disk Utility, select your Mac OS X startup volume, click First Aid, and then click Repair Disk Permissions.

6 Engineering details

Introduction

- Steps to Install HP Web Jetadmin 10.0
- <u>Supported paper tables</u>
- Special paper guidelines table
- Sizes (min & max) and supported paper by tray
- Media attributes and commands
- Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Install Notes
- Troubleshooting

Steps to Install HP Web Jetadmin 10.0

To begin the installation, follow these steps:

1. Download the HP Web Jetadmin 10.0 software from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

- 2. Run WJASETUP.EXE.
- 3. Follow the instructions as each page is displayed.
- 4. When the installation is complete, click **Close**.

Supported paper tables

This product supports a number of paper sizes, and it adapts to various paper.

NOTE: To obtain best print results, select the appropriate paper size and type in your print driver before printing.

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2 or optional tray 3
Letter	216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 inches)	Х	Х
Legal	216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches)	Х	Х
A4	210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 inches)	Х	Х
Executive	184 x 267 mm (7.24 x 10.51 inches)	х	Х
A3	297 x 420 mm (11.69 x 16.54 inches)		
A5	148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 inches)	х	Х
A6	105 x 148 mm (4.13 x 5.83 inches)	х	Х
B4 (JIS)	257 x 364 mm (10.12 x 14.33 inches)		
B5 (JIS)	182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 inches)	х	Х
B5 (ISO)	176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 inches)		
B6 (ISO)	125 x 176 mm (4.92 x 6.93 inches)		
16k	184 x 260 mm (7.24 x 10.23 inches)		
	195 x 270 mm (7.68 x 10.62 inches)	х	Х
	197 x 273 mm (7.75 x 10.75 inches)		
8.5 x 13	216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 inches)	Х	Х
4 x 6	107 x 152 mm (4 x 6 inches)	Х	Х
5 x 8	127 x 203 mm (5 x 8 inches)	Х	Х
10 x 15 cm	100 x 150 mm (3.9 x 5.9 inches)	Х	Х
Custom	(76 - 216) x (127 - 356) mm ((3 - 8.5) x (5 - 14) inches)	Х	Х

Table 6-2 Supported envelopes and postcards

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2
Envelope #10	105 x 241 mm (4.13 x 9.49 inches)	х	Х
Envelope DL	110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 inches)	Х	Х
Envelope C5	162 x 229 mm (6.93 x 9.84 inches)	Х	X
Envelope B5	176 x 250 mm (6.7 x 9.8 inches)	Х	Х
Envelope Monarch	98 x 191 mm (3.9 x 7.5 inches)	Х	X

Table 6-2 Supported envelopes and postcards (continued)

Size	Dimensions	Tray 1	Tray 2
Postcard	100 x 148 mm (3.94 x 5.83 inches)	Х	х
Double postcard	148 x 200 mm (5.83 x 7.87 inches)	X	X

Special paper guidelines table

This product supports printing on special paper. Use the following guidelines to obtain satisfactory results. When using special paper or paper, be sure to set the type and size in your print driver to obtain the best print results.

△ CAUTION: HP LaserJet products use fusers to bond dry toner particles to the paper in very precise dots. HP laser paper is designed to withstand this extreme heat. Using inkjet paper not designed for this technology could damage your product.

Media type	Do	Do not
Envelopes	 Store envelopes flat. Use envelopes where the seam extends all the way to the corner of the envelope. Use peel-off adhesive strips that are approved for use in laser printers. 	 Do not use envelopes that are wrinkled, nicked, stuck together, or otherwise damaged. Do not use envelopes that have clasps, snaps, windows, or coated linings. Do not use self-stick adhesives or other synthetic materials.
Labels	 Use only labels that have no exposed backing between them. Use Labels that lie flat. 	 Do not use labels that have wrinkles or bubbles, or are damaged. Do not print partial sheets of labels.
	• Use only full sheets of labels.	
Transparencies	 Use only transparencies that are approved for use in laser printers. Place transparencies on a flat surface after removing them from the product. 	 Do not use transparencies not approved for laser printers.
Letterhead or preprinted forms	 Use only letterhead or forms approved for use in laser printers. 	Do not use raised or metallic letterhead.
Heavy paper	 Use only heavy paper that is approved for use in laser printers and meets the weight specifications for this product. 	• Do not use paper that is heavier than the recommended paper specification for this product unless it is HP paper that has been approved for use in this product.
Glossy or coated paper	 Use only glossy or coated paper that is approved for use in laser printers. 	 Do not use glossy or coated paper designed for use in inkjet products.

Engineering details

Sizes (min & max) and supported paper by tray

Media type	Dimensions ¹	Weight	Capacity ²	Paper orientation	
Paper, including the following types:	Minimum: 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches)	60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb)	Tray 1: up to 50 sheets	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	
Plain	Maximum: 216 x 356 mm		Trays 2 and 3: up to 250 sheets of		
Letterhead	(8.5 x 14 inches)		75 g/m ² (20 lb bond)		
• Color					
Preprinted					
Prepunched					
Recycled					
Thick paper	Same as for paper	Up to 200 g/m ² (53 lb)	Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face-	
			Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (0.98 inch) stack height	up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	
Cover paper	Same as for paper	Up to 200 g/m ² (53 lb)	Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	
			Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (.98 inch) stack height		
Glossy paper	Same as for paper	Up to 220 g/m ² (59 lb)	Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	
Photo paper			Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (.98 inch) stack height		
Transparencies	A4 or Letter	Thickness: 0.12 to	Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at	
		0.13 mm (4.7 to 5.1 mils)	Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (.98 inch) stack height	the back of the tray	
Labels ³	A4 or Letter	Thickness: up to 0.23 mm (9 mils)	Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	
			Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (.98 inch) stack height		
Envelopes	• COM 10	Up to 90 g/m ² (24 lb)	Tray 1: up to 10 envelopes	Side to be printed on face- up, with the stamp-end at the back of the tray	
	Monarch		Trays 2 and 3: up to 30 envelopes		
	• DL				
	• C5				
	• B5				
Postcards or index cards	100 x 148 mm (3.9 x 5.8 inches)		Tray 1: single sheet only	Side to be printed on face- up, with the top edge at the back of the tray	

Media type	Dimensions ¹	Weight	Capacity ²	Paper orientation
			Trays 2 and 3: up to 25 mm (.98 inch) sta height	
¹ The	product supports a wide rang	e of standard and custo	m sizes of paper. Check the prir	nt driver for supported sizes.

² Capacity can vary depending on paper weight and thickness, and environmental conditions.

³ Smoothness: 100 to 250 (Sheffield)

Media attributes and commands

This section includes the following information about paper attributes:

- Media types and sizes
- Custom paper sizes

Media types and sizes

The tables in this section provide information about paper features, paper attributes, and paper-handling constraints for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

NOTE: The following table lists the features and attributes of various paper listed under the **Size Is** drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the operating system. The list will contain all the sizes shown here, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Paper sizes	Width	Height
Letter	216 mm	279 mm
	(8.5 inches)	(11.0 inches)
Legal	216 mm	355 mm
	(8.5 inches)	(14.0 inches)
A4	210 mm	297 mm
	(8.27 inches)	(11.69 inches)
Executive	185 mm	266 mm
	(7.25 inches)	(10.5 inches)
B5 (ISO)	176 mm	250 mm
	(6.93 inches)	(9.84 inches)
Envelope #10	105 mm	241 mm
	(4.13 inches)	(9.5 inches)
Envelope Monarch	99 mm	190 mm
	(3.88 inches)	(7.5 inches)
Envelope C5 (ISO)	162 mm	229 mm
	(6.38 inches)	(9.02 inches)
Envelope DL (ISO)	110 mm	220 mm
	(4.33 inches)	(8.66 inches)
Envelope B5 (ISO)	176 mm	250 mm
	(6.93 inches)	(9.84 inches)
Custom	Minimum:	Minimum:
	76 mm	127 mm

Table 6-3 Supported paper attributes

Table 6-3 Supported paper attributes (continued)

Paper sizes	Width	Height	
	(3.0 inches)	(5.00 inches)	
	Maximum:	Maximum:	
	216 mm	356 mm	
	(8.5 inches)	(14.0 inches)	
B5 (JIS)	182 mm	257 mm	
	(7.16 inches)	(10.12 inches)	
Postcard (JIS)	100 mm	148 mm	
	(3.94 inches)	(5.83 inches)	
Double Postcard (JIS)	148 mm	200 mm	
	(5.83 inches)	(7.87 inches)	
A5	148 mm	210 mm	
	(5.83 inches)	(8.27 inches)	
8.5 x 13 (Foolscap)	216 mm	330 mm	
	(8.5 inches)	(13 inches)	
16K 7.75 x 10.75	197 mm	273 mm	
	(7.75 inches)	(10.75 inches)	
16K 184x260mm	184 mm	260 mm	
	7.2 inches	10.2 inches	
16K 195x270mm	195 mm	270 mm	
	7.67 inches	10.6 inches	

Custom paper sizes

The following table identifies the paper types the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer supports in trays 1 and 2.

Table 6-4 Tray 1 and Tray 2 specifications

Tray 1 and Tray 2	Dimensions ¹	Weight	Capacity ²
Paper	Minimum: 76 x 127 mm	60 to 163 g/m ² (16 to 43 lb)	Single sheet of 75 g/m ² (20 lb) paper for Tray 1
	(3 x 5 inches)	Up to 176 g/m ² (47 lb) for	
	Maximum: 216 x 356 mm	postcards	Up to 250 sheets for Tray 2
	(8.5 x 14 inches)		
HP LaserJet glossy paper and HP LaserJet photo paper	Same as the preceding listed minimum and maximum sizes.	75 to 220 g/m ² (20 to 58 lb)	Single sheet of HP LaserJet glossy paper or HP LaserJet photo paper for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
HP Premium Cover Paper ⁴	-	200 g/m ² (53 lb) cover	Single sheet of HP Cover paper for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
Transparencies and opaque film	-	Thickness: 0.10 to 0.13 mm	Single sheet of transparency or opague film for Tray 1
		(3.9 to 5.1 mils)	,
	-		Up to 50 sheets for Tray 2
Labels ³		Thickness: up to 0.23 mm (up to 9 mils)	Single sheet of labels for Tray 1
			Up to 25 mm (0.99 inch) stack height for Tray 2
Envelopes	-	Up to 90 g/m ² (up to 24 lb)	Single envelope for Tray 1
			Up to ten envelopes for Tray 2

¹ The product supports a wide range of standard and custom sizes of paper. Check the print driver for supported sizes.

² Capacity can vary depending on paper weight and thickness, and environmental conditions.

³ Smoothness: 100 to 250 (Sheffield).

⁴ Hewlett-Packard does not guarantee results when printing with other types of heavy paper.

Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Install Notes

Edition 1, 5/2008

Contents

- I. INTRODUCTION
- II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION
- III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS
- IV. UNINSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS
- V. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE
- VI. LEGAL STATEMENTS

I. INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT

This document provides specific installation instructions and other information you should know before you install and use the printing system. Installation instructions are provided in this document for the following operating systems:

- Windows 2000 (Express Install only)
- Windows 2003 Server (Express Install Only)
- Windows XP Home 32 bit
- Windows XP Professional 64 bit (Express Install only)
- Windows Vista™ 32-bit
- Windows Vista™ 64 bit
- Mac OS X V10.2.8, V10.3, V10.4 and later

NOTE: The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series does not support the following operating systems:

- Windows 98
- Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- Windows NT 4.0
- Windows 3.1x
- Mac OS 9.x and earlier

The HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer has the following features:

- 128-megabyte (MB) random-access memory (RAM)
- Full-color laser printing

- 600 x 600 x 8 bit dots-per-inch (dpi) text and graphics (ImageREt 3600)
- 50-sheet capacity (tray 1)
- 250-sheet capacity universal tray (tray 2)
- Prints 20 pages per minute (ppm) in color and 20 ppm in black & white (letter- and A4-size pages)
- Hi-Speed USB 2.0 port
- Built-in networking to connect to 10Base-T/100Base-TX networks (IPV4 and IPV6)

This file provides specific installation, compatibility, and troubleshooting information. For additional information about product features and driver features, see the product user guide and the online Help that is included with each software component.

WHO NEEDS THIS SOFTWARE?

All users require this printing-system software to operate the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printer.

OVERVIEW OF THE PRINTING-SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The CD-ROM has software for IBM-compatible computer systems and Macintosh computer systems. For more information about a particular driver or software component, see its associated online Help. The Macintosh software is on a separate partition of the CD that is only viewable from a Macintosh computer.

End-user software components for Recommended installs (Easy and Advanced installs)

Drivers

A driver is software that allows software applications to access product features. Typically, you should install drivers for each product. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your product includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP Color LaserJet CP2020 series PCL6 printer driver for Windows 2000, Server 2003, XP and Vista
- USB Printing Support
- HP Standard TCP/IP Port

Software programs

- HP Update
- Shop for HP Supplies
- HP ToolboxFX
- HP Customer Participation Program 10.0 (you can choose not to install this by using the Express USB or Express Network install)
- User Guide (Windows Help format)

HP ToolboxFX

HP ToolboxFX is a program that you can use to complete the following tasks:

- Check the product status.
- Configure the product settings.
- Configure pop-up alert messages.
- View troubleshooting information.
- View online documentation

You can view HP ToolboxFX when the product is directly connected to your computer or is connected to the network. You must perform a Recommended Install to use HP ToolboxFX.

NOTE: HP ToolboxFX is not supported for Windows 2000, Server 2003, and XP 64 operating systems.

You do not have to have Internet access to open and use HP ToolboxFX.

End-user software components for Express USB and Express Network installs

Drivers

A driver is software that allows software applications to access product features. Typically, you should install drivers for each product. The printing-system software CD-ROM that came with your product includes the following Windows drivers:

- HP Color LaserJet CP2020 series PCL6 printer driver for Windows 2000, XP and Vista
- USB Printing Support
- HP Standard TCP/IP Port

Product documentation

To view the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series User Guide, insert the product CD into the CD-ROM drive. When the animated setup guide appears, select View User Guide at the top of the screen.

The HP Color LaserJet CP0220 Series Printer User Guide and Install Notes are on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series CD at the following location:

Document: HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer User Guide

File name: LJCP2020_use_<language code>.pdf

File name: LJCP2020_use_<language code>.chm

Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJCP2020_use_<language code>.pdf

Path: <CD-ROM Drive>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJCP2020_use_<language code>.chm

Document: HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Printer Install Notes

File name: LJCP2020_install-notes_<language code>.htm

Path: <CD-ROM Driver>:\<Language>\MANUALS\LJCP2020_install-notes_<language code>.htm

The latest version of Acrobat Reader is available on the Adobe website at www.adobe.com.

II. LATE-BREAKING INFORMATION

KNOWN ISSUES AND WORKAROUNDS

For an updated listing of known issues for the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series printing-system software, see the following URL (a connection to the public Internet is required): http:// h20000.www2.hp.com/bizsupport/TechSupport/Document.jsp?objectID=c00849739

General

- Some high-speed USB 2.0 cards might have unsigned host-controller drivers. If you have purchased a USB 2.0 add-in card and have an unsigned driver, you might experience driver-installation problems or communication problems between the product and HP software. It is recommended that you always use a Microsoft WHQL Certified host-controller driver with your USB hardware.
- Plug and Play print-driver packages are available at the following URL: www.hp.com/support/ ljcp2020series
- Functionality is limited on systems that only meet minimum system requirements. Many images
 and videos require a system that meets the recommended system requirements for acceptable
 performance and reliability.
- If your product is not recognized, check the following:
 - Verify that your cable is USB 2.0 high-speed compliant.
 - Ensure that your cable is connected correctly. Remove the USB cable, look at the end of the cable, and then match it to the pattern on the USB port. Make sure that it is not upside-down. Insert one end of the USB cable completely into the USB port on the HP product, and insert the other end into the back of the computer.
 - Verify that the product is turned on. The product cannot be recognized if the power is off.
 - Make sure that the USB cable is not longer than 5 meters (16.4 feet).
 - Verify that the USB port is enabled. Some computers are sold with disabled USB ports.
- On a non-English system, some components might display English text.

Windows Sharing

The printer drivers for this product are supported only for Windows 2000, 2003 Server, XP and Windows Vista. The product cannot be shared with Windows clients that are running Windows 98, Me, NT 4.0, or earlier versions of the Windows operating system.

Shared Windows clients that are not directly connected to the product will not receive software-alert messages at the computer. Only the computer that is directly connected to the product will receive software-alert messages.

HP ToolboxFX

HP ToolboxFX utilizes Microsoft .Net Framework version 2.0. Depending on the configuration of your computer, you might need to update your system configuration after installation by using Windows Update. If you encounter problems with HP ToolboxFX, install all available critical updates from Windows Update.

Upgrading Windows

HP recommends that you uninstall HP products before upgrading to a newer supported version of Windows. For example, when upgrading from Windows XP to Windows Vista, uninstall your HP product by using the Uninstall option found in the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series program group, and then upgrade to the new operating system. After the operating system upgrade is complete, re-install your HP product by using the latest software available at the following URL: www.hp.com/support/ljcp2020series

III. INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

For Windows operating systems, the CD-ROM setup or installation software detects the version and language of the operating system that you are using.

INSTALL SOFTWARE ON XP AND WINDOWS VISTA

NOTE: Administrator privileges are required to install the printing system.

Recommended installation from a CD-ROM (network and USB)

NOTE: For USB installations, do not connect the USB cable to the product or the computer until instructed.

- 1. Close all programs.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM.
- 3. If the HP printing system installer program has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps.
 - a. Select Run from the Start menu on your taskbar.
 - **b.** Browse to the root directory on the CD-ROM drive.
 - **c.** Select the AUTORUN.EXE file, click Open, and then click OK. When the animated installation guide appears, click Begin Setup for help setting up the product.
 - **d.** Watch the animated installation guide, and then click Install Software to start the software installation.
- 4. Select 'Recommended' when prompted.
- 5. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Express Install for Windows 2000, Server 2003, XP and Vista (installs only the printer driver and statusalert software)

NOTE: For USB installations do not connect the USB cable to the product or the computer until instructed.

- 1. Close all programs.
- 2. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series CD-ROM.
- 3. If the HP printing system installer has not started after 30 seconds, complete these steps.
 - a. Select Run from the Start menu on your taskbar.
 - **b.** Browse to the root directory on the CD-ROM drive.

- **c.** Select the SETUP.EXE file, click Open, and then click OK. When the animated installation guide appears, click Begin Setup for help setting up the product.
- **d.** `Watch the animated installation guide, and then click Install Software to start the software installation.
- 4. Select Express USB or Express Network when prompted.
- 5. Follow the on-screen instructions.

CONFIGURE TRAY 3

To configure your print driver to use Tray 3

- 1. Open the "Printers and Faxes" folder. Typically this is done by clicking Start, and select Printers and Faxes. (In Windows Vista, Click Start, Control Panel, Hardware and Sound, Printers)
- 2. Right-click the printer name, and click Properties.
- 3. Click Device Settings, and select Installable Options.
- 4. Next to Tray 3, select Installed, and click OK.

CONFIGURE AUTOMATIC TWO-SIDED PRINTING

To configure your print driver to use the automatic two-sided printing (duplexer).

NOTE: Two-sided printing is supported on the HP Color LaserJet CP2020dn and HP Color LaserJet CP2020x products.

- 1. Open the "Printers and Faxes" folder. Typically this is done by clicking Start, and select Printers and Faxes. (In Windows Vista, Click Start, Control Panel, Hardware and Sound, Printers)
- 2. Right-click the printer name, and click Properties.
- 3. Click Device Settings, and select Installable Options.
- 4. Next to Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing), select Installed, and click OK.

IV. UNINSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

WINDOWS UNINSTALLER

The uninstall link in the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Program Group is available only if a Recommended Install has been completed. It removes all of the printing-system components.

- 1. From the Start menu, click HP.
- 2. Select the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series program group.
- 3. Click Uninstall.
- 4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

ADD/REMOVE PROGRAMS

Add/Remove Programs uninstall is available for Recommended or Express Installations.

- 1. Open the Microsoft Windows Control Panel.
- 2. Double-click Add/Remove Programs. The following items are installed by the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Recommended install.
 - HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series 1.0
 - HP Customer Participation Program 10.0. (used by multiple HP products)
 - HP Update (used by multiple HP products)
 - HPSSupply (used by multiple HP products)

The following items are installed by the HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series Express Install

- HP Color LaserJet CP2020 Series 1.0
- **3.** For each item you want to remove, highlight it in the list and then click Change/Remove. Follow the on-screen instructions.

V. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE

For customer support information, see the product user guide or the in-box support flyer. Or, call your local authorized HP dealer.

You can also go to the following URL for online technical support: www.hp.com/support/ljCP2020series

VI. LEGAL STATEMENTS

TRADEMARK NOTICES

Adobe® and Acrobat® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, and Windows® XP are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Windows Vista[™] is either a registered trademark or trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

WARRANTY AND COPYRIGHT

Warranty

See the product user guide for complete warranty and support information.

Copyright

© 2008 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation, or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Troubleshooting

- Port communication
- File to E-mail utility
- Manual scrubber
- <u>E-mail</u>

Port communication

- Overview
- USB port connections
- Device conflicts in Windows

Overview

The HP Color LaserJet CP2025 Series printer has a USB port. The HP Color LaserJet CP2025n, dn, and x models include both a 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and a USB port.

The product can be connected with either the 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port or the USB port. The product does *not* support connection over a parallel port.

NOTE: Do not connect both the 10/100Base-T TCP/IP network port and the USB port at the same time.

USB port connections

Hi-speed USB is an input/output mode that both Windows and Macintosh computers support. A wide variety of consumer products, such as digital cameras and scanners, also support USB. Hi-speed USB is the current standard. HP LaserJet products are compatible with Hi-speed USB specifications.

A USB host is distinct from a USB product. HP LaserJet products are USB products. They can connect *only* to a USB host or a powered USB hub.

Device conflicts in Windows

When two-way communication cannot be established with the product, the Windows Device Manager might show a conflict. Conflicts should be resolved immediately, before continuing to troubleshoot two-way communication issues. The following sections contain a few guidelines for identifying and resolving these conflicts.

Open the Windows Device Manager

Follow these steps to open the Windows Device Manager:

1. In Windows 2000, click Start, select Settings, and then click Control Panel.

-or-

In Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, or Windows Vista, click Start, and then select Settings.

- 2. Click Control Panel.
- 3. In Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, and Windows XP, click the **System** icon.

Engineering details

-or-

In Windows Vista, click Hardware and Sound.

4. In Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, and Windows XP, click **Device Manager** on the **Hardware** tab.

-or-

In Windows Vista, click Device Manager.

Check for product conflicts

Follow these steps to check for product conflicts:

- 1. Look for products that appear on the list with a yellow exclamation mark (!) or a red X.
- Identify port conflicts by double-clicking **Port** or by clicking the plus sign (+). Conflicts here usually
 interfere with two-way communication.
- 3. To check the status of a product, click the product name, and then click **Properties**. The **Device Status** appears in the middle of the dialog box.
- 4. To check the **Conflicting Device** list, click the product name, and then click **Properties**. Click the **Resources** tab, and look at the **Conflicting Device** list at the bottom of the dialog box.
- 5. Click the plus sign (+) to the left of **Open the Other Devices**. Misidentified or noncategorized products are placed here.

Guidelines for troubleshooting and resolving product conflicts

Follow these steps to resolve product conflicts:

- 1. If the conflicting product is no longer present in the list of products, click the product name, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.
- 2. If the conflicting product is a duplicate (and one of the duplicate listings does not show a conflict), click the name(s) of the product(s) that have a conflict, click **Remove**, and then click **Yes**. Click **Yes** to restart Windows.
 - NOTE: You might not need to restart the computer, depending on the type of port conflict you are resolving.
- 3. If a product has a conflict and you have the driver for that product, remove the product and then reinstall it. After removing the product, restart the computer. When Windows reinstalls products, it usually finds nonconflicting resources.

Installed product

Click the View menu to see more options:

- Products by Type
- Products by Connection
- Resources by Type
- Resources by connection
- Hidden Products
File to E-mail utility

The File to E-mail utility collects the data specified in an .INI file and then attaches the data files to an e-mail that can be sent to HP Customer Support to assist troubleshooting. The utility runs on the computer, but does not interact with the product.

The tool is included on the installer CD, but is *not* copied to the computer during the software installation. HP Customer Support can also send the utility by e-mail or by posting it to an HP Web site.

The tool is compatible with Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Vista.

The File to E-mail utility runs with any MAPI-compliant e-mail applications. It does not run with Webbased e-mail services such as Yahoo, Hotmail, or AOL.

Depending on the speed of the computer, it might take a few minutes for the utility to gather the log files and attach them to an e-mail message.

The File to E-mail utility consists of two files that are located in the util folder on the product printingsystem software CD:

- <CD-ROM drive>util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.exe
- <CD-ROM drive>util\CCC\FiletoEmail\FileToEmail.ini

To use the File to E-mail utility, copy these files to the desktop, navigate to them in Explorer, and doubleclick **FileToEmail.exe** to open the utility. The utility generates files, opens an e-mail message, and attaches the files so that you can send them to the system administrator.

If the File to E-mail utility is not successful for any reason (for instance, if you cancel the new message or you are using Web-based e-mail software), all the files are copied to a folder on the desktop that is named HpCCC, possibly with strings of zeros attached to the end. You can zip these files and e-mail them separately.

Manual scrubber

NOTE: The scrubber runs automatically as part of the uninstall process. The scrubber can also be run manually.

If the installer fails and troubleshooting efforts have not solved the problem, use the scrubber utility to remove files.

The scrubber utility is located on the printing-system software CD in the following folder:

<CD-ROM drive>util\CCC

E-mail

If e-mail messages fail to be sent, try following these steps:

- 1. Open Windows Microsoft Explorer or Internet Explorer and navigate to the file.
- 2. Right-click the file, select Send To, and then click Mail Recipient.

If this method fails, check the MAPI mail setup. The MAPI setup is a third-party issue.

Index

Symbols/Numerics

% of Normal Size setting print drivers 200

Α

About tab HP ToolboxFX 84 print driver 227 accessibility features 4 Adobe Acrobat Reader installing 19, 52 Advanced Printing Features setting, print drivers 170 Advanced settings for networks, HP ToolboxFX 82 HP EWS (Windows) 110 Advanced tab, print drivers 167 alerts e-mail 34, 48 pop-up 34 Set up Status Alerts, HP ToolboxFX 44 system-tray icons 34 Alerts folder, HP ToolboxFX 43 Alternative Letterhead Mode 172 Animated Demonstrations, HP ToolboxFX 56 animated getting started guide 16, 130 ASCII output protocol 224 Auto continue settings 73 Automatic color settings 215

В

binary output protocol 224 binding settings HP PCL 6 print driver 209 bins capacity 4 custom paper sizes 190 bitmaps, sending TrueType fonts as HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 170 black, printing all text as print drivers 171 booklets HP PCL 6 print driver settings 210 print driver settings 210 browsers supported, HP ToolboxFX 33

С

calibration HP ToolboxFX 53 capacity output bin 4 Cartridge low threshold settings 73 cartridges, print Macintosh status 246 CD-ROM directory structure, Macintosh 234 directory structure, Windows 11 installer, Windows printingsystem software 16 installing Macintosh printingsystem software 237 languages, Macintosh 234 languages, Windows 11 cleaning page HP ToolboxFX 53 color Edge Control 216 halftone options 216

HP Basic Color Match tool 30 HP ColorSphere toner 27 HP ImageREt 3600 27 matching 29 matching, HP Basic Color Match tool 30 **Microsoft Office Basic Colors** palette 29 Neutral Grays 216 Print All Text as Black 171 printed vs. monitor 29 settings 169 specify options in a printing shortcut 174 sRGB 27, 28, 217 troubleshooting with HP ToolboxFX 54 Color tab print driver 214 Color Themes print drivers 217 Color Usage Job Log HP EWS 93 HP ToolboxFX 42 common installer, features 19 components, software installed for Windows 128 Macintosh 231, 233, 236 Windows 10 conflicts, device 267 Connection time-out (I/O) settings 73 constraint messages 166 copies, number of HP ToolboxFX setting 61 print driver settings 168 cover page options, print driver 194

Ctrl-D settings 224 custom paper sizes driver settings 190 trays that support 258 custom-size paper settings Macintosh 244 customer support 85 Customization Wizard languages, Windows 11

D

density HP EWS 101 HP ToolboxFX 66 **Device Configuration** HP EWS (Windows) 89 HP ToolboxFX 38 device conflicts 267 **Device Information** HP EWS (Windows) 95 HP ToolboxFX 58 **Device Settings** HP ToolboxFX folder 57 tab, print driver Properties 219 **Device Status** HP EWS (Windows) 87 HP ToolboxFX 36 device status Macintosh Services tab 246 diagnostics 26, 218 dialog boxes, printing-system software installation Mac OS X 238 DIMMs, fonts driver settings 222 directory structure, CD-ROM Macintosh 234 Windows 11 disk space requirements Macintosh 230 **Document Options** print drivers 169, 206 document preview image print drivers 196, 217 documentation animated guides 16 languages, Windows 11

localized versions 5 operating systems supported 232 dots per inch (dpi) HP ImageREt 3600 27 specifications 3 double-sided printing custom paper sizes 190 print driver settings 207 Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box 207 specify in a printing shortcut 174 downloading printing-system software 11 downloading software Linux 126 dpi (dots per inch) HP ImageREt 3600 27 specifications 3 drivers Macintosh settings 244 presets (Macintosh) 244 See also print drivers Drum low threshold settings 73 duplexing. See double-sided printing

Е

e-mail alerts 34, 48 troubleshooting 269 troubleshooting File to E-mail utility 269 Easy Printer Care 31 Edge Control 216 Effects tab print drivers 198 Energy Star compliance 4 error messages Auto continue settings 73 constraint, print drivers 166 pop-up alerts 34 Euro symbol 225 Event Log HP EWS (Windows) 94 HP ToolboxFX 43 EWS. See HP EWS (Windows) or HP EWS (Macintosh)

External Fonts settings, print drivers 221

F

fax driver languages, Windows 11 operating systems supported 23 features installer 19 product 3 File to E-mail utility 269 Finishing tab print drivers 169, 206 first or last page different 195 Flip Pages Up settings HP PCL 6 print driver 209 Font Substitution Table, HP PS **Emulation Universal Print** Driver 221 fonts DIMM settings, drivers 222 Euro symbol 225 External, print drivers 221 HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 225 languages, Windows 11 lists, printing 92 Send TrueType as Bitmap, HP PCL 6 print driver 171 Send TrueType as bitmap, HP **PS Emulation Universal Print** Driver 170 TrueType settings, print drivers 169 watermark settings, print drivers 203, 205 Windows 116, 118 Form to Tray Assignment, drivers 220 formatter number 38 fuser modes 67

G

Gloss Level, HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 197 grayscale settings 214, 225

н

halftoning 214

Help folder, HP ToolboxFX 51 print drivers 166 HP Basic Color Match tool 30, 114, 157 HP ColorSphere toner 27 **HP** Customer Participation Program HP EWS 113 HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 26 HP Easy Printer Care 31, 114, 157 HP Embedded Web Server (Macintosh). See HP EWS (Macintosh) HP Embedded Web Server (Windows), See HP EWS (Windows) HP EWS (Macintosh) about 236, 243 HP EWS (Windows) accessing 86 Advanced settings 110 Color Usage Job Log 93 Device Configuration 89 Device Information 95 Device Status 87 Event Log 94 HP ToolboxFX 32 Network Summary 91 Networking tab 106 Paper Handling 96 Paper Types 101 Password 106 PCL5c 99 PostScript settings 99 Print Density 101 Print Info Pages 92 Print Quality 100 Printing settings 98 Settings tab 94 **SNMP** 111 Status tab 86 Supplies Status 88 System Setup 105 HP ImageREt 3600 27 HP Instant Support 85 **HP Marketing Resource** Software 158

HP PCL 6 print driver about 21 About tab 227 Advanced Printing Features, enabling 169 Advanced tab 167 Alternative Letterhead Mode 172 booklet printing 210 Color tab 214 constraint messages 166 Copy Count 168 Device Settings tab 219 Document Options 169, 206 Effects tab 198 Finishing tab 206 Graphic settings 168 Help 166 Image Color Management (ICM) 169 Layout Options 173 orientation settings 212 Pages per Sheet 211 Paper/Output settings 168 Paper/Quality tab 188 Print All Text as Black 171 Print Data Optimization 22, 171 Print on Both Sides 207 Printer Features 171 Printing Preferences tab 164 Printing Shortcuts tab 174 Properties tab 164, 165 Raster Compression 171 Resizing Options 198 Send TrueType as Bitmap 171 Services tab 218 TrueType font settings 169 Watermarks settings 201 HP PCL6 print driver Color Themes 217 HP Postscript Emulation Universal Print Driver. See HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver HP PS Emulation Print Driver Help 166 HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver about 21

About tab 227 Advanced Printing Features, enabling 169 Advanced tab 167 booklet printing 210 Color tab 214 Color Themes 217 constraint messages 166 Copy Count 168 Ctrl-D settings 224 Device Settings tab 219 diagnostics 26 Document Options 206 document preview image 196, 217 Effects tab 198 Finishing tab 206 Font DIMM Installer 222 font settings 225 Font Substitution Table 221 Form to Tray Assignment 220 Graphic settings 168 Image Color Management (ICM) 169 included 23 Installable Options settings 223 Internet Services 218 JPEG Passthrough 226 languages, Windows 11 Layout Options 173 Mirror Image 213 orientation settings 212 Output Protocol settings 224 Pages per Sheet 211 Paper Options 189 Paper/Output settings 168 Paper/Quality tab 188 PostScript Device settings 223 PostScript Memory settings 224 PostScript Options 170 PostScript Passthrough 226 Print All Text as Black 171 Print on Both Sides 207 Printer Features 171 Printing Preferences tab 164 Printing Shortcuts tab 174 Properties tab 164, 165

Resizing Options 198 Services tab 218 timeout settings 225 TrueType font settings 169 version number 24 Watermarks settings 201 HP PS Emulation Universal Printer Driver Document Options 169 HP real life technologies, HP PCL 6 print driver 196 HP Smart Web Printing 114, 157 HP ToolboxFX About 84 Advanced network settings 82 Alerts folder 43 Animated Demonstrations 56 Auto continue settings 73 browsers supported 33 Color Usage Job Log 42 Device Configuration 38 Device Information 58 Device Settings folder 57 Device Status 36 e-mail alerts 34 Event Log 43 features 32 Help folder 51 HP Basic Color Match tool, opening 30 HP EWS 32 HP Instant Support 85 Jam recovery settings 73 **Microsoft Office Basic Colors** palette, printing 29 Network Settings folder 76 Network Summary 40 opening screen 33 Paper Handling 59 Paper Types 67 Password settings 75 PCL5 63 pop-up alert messages 34 PostScript settings 64 Print Density 66 Print Info Pages 41 Print Modes 69 Print Quality 65 Printing settings 61 Product Information folder 50

Product Registration 85 Save/Restore settings 74 sections 33 Set up E-mail Alerts 48 Set up Status Alerts 44 Shop for Supplies 85 **SNMP** Configuration settings 83 starting 33, 34 Status folder 35 Supplies Status 37 Support and Troubleshooting 85 system requirements 33 System Setup 73 Troubleshooting folder 52 User Guide 57 hybrid printing 22, 171

ICM (Image Color Management) settings 169 Image Color Management (ICM) settings 169 image quality HP ImageREt 3600 27 ImageREt 3600 4, 27 information pages print from HP EWS (Windows) 92 print from HP ToolboxFX 41 Installable Options HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 223 installation Adobe Acrobat Reader 19. 52 detailed Windows instructions 130 dialog boxes, Mac OS X 238 File to E-mail utility 269 Mac OS X V10.4 or later setup 241 Macintosh printing-system software 237 of print drivers by using a CD 128 software components by install type 128

system requirements for Macintosh 230 troubleshooting Macintosh 241 types for Windows 127 installers common, features 19 included 232 Windows 16 Instant Support, HP 85 interface ports types included 4 Internet Services 218 **IPv4** Configuration HP EWS 106 HP ToolboxFX 79 IPv6 Configuration HP EWS 107 HP ToolboxFX 80

J

jams recovery settings 73 Job Timeout settings 225 JPEG Passthrough 226

L,

landscape orientation Flip Pages Up, HP PCL 6 print driver 209 print drivers 212 languages documentation 5 Macintosh CD-ROMs 234 Windows CD-ROMs 11 Layout Options, print drivers 173 Linux drivers 126 localized CD-ROMs, Macintosh 234 CD-ROMs, Windows 11 documentation 5

Μ

Macintosh components, software 231, 236 dialog boxes, Mac OS X printingsystem software installation 238 directory structure, CD-ROM 234

driver settings 244 drivers supported 23 hardware requirements 230 HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) 243 install notes 237 installers 232 installing printing-system software 237 localized software CDs 234 PDEs 236 PPDs 236 resize documents 244 setting up with Mac OS X V10.4 or later 241 software components 233 supported operating systems 230 troubleshooting setup 241 Macintosh driver settings custom-size paper 244 Services tab 246 watermarks 244 Manual color settings print drivers 215 manual features Print on Both Sides (Manually) check box 207 scrubber utility 269 manuals localized versions 5 operating systems supported 232 match color Image Color Management (ICM) 169 match colors about 29 HP Basic Color Match tool 30 media custom-size, Macintosh settings 244 pages per sheet 245 memory Device Configuration, HP ToolboxFX 38 driver settings 223 HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver settings 224 included 3

Macintosh requirements 230 specifications 3 messages Auto continue settings 73 constraint, print drivers 166 pop-up alerts 34 Microsoft Office Basic Colors palette, printing 29 Mirror Image, HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 213 multiple pages per sheet 245

Ν

n-up printing 245 Network port type included 4 Network Settings folder, HP ToolboxFX 76 Network Summary HP EWS (Windows) 91 HP ToolboxFX 40, 78 Networking tab, HP EWS (Windows) 106 networks Advanced settings 82 HP EWS, accessing 86 HP ToolboxFX settings 40 models supporting 3 Password settings 75 SNMP settings 83 Neutral Grays 216 number of copies print driver settings 168

0

online Help HP ToolboxFX 51 print drivers 166 operating systems availability of software components 10 supported 3, 124 Optimize for Raster 22, 171 Optimize for Raster 22, 171 Optimize for Text and Vector 22, 171 orientation, page Flip Pages Up, HP PCL 6 print driver 209 print drivers 212 output bin capacity 4 custom paper sizes 190 Output Protocol settings, HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 224 output quality HP ImageREt 3600 27

Ρ

page orientation Flip Pages Up, HP PCL 6 print driver 209 print drivers 212 pages per minute 3 pages per sheet 245 Pages per Sheet settings print drivers 211 paper Alternative Letterhead Mode 172 custom sizes 190 custom sizes supported 258 custom-size, Macintosh settings 244 guidelines for special paper 253 pages per sheet 245 Pages per Sheet settings, print drivers 211 Paper Handling 59 Print Document On settings, print drivers 199 print modes 67 Print on Both Sides, print driver 207 Size is settings, drivers 189 sizes supported 256 Source is settings, drivers 192 supported 251 supported sizes 251 Type is: settings, drivers 192 types supported 256 Paper Handling HP EWS (Windows) 96 HP ToolboxFX 59 Paper Options drivers 189 Paper Types HP EWS (Windows) 101

HP ToolboxFX 67 specify in a printing shortcut 174 Paper/Output settings, print drivers 168 Paper/Quality tab print drivers 188 parallel port, not supported 267 part numbers documentation 5 Password settings HP EWS (Windows) 106 HP ToolboxFX 75 PCL5 HP ToolboxFX 63 PCL5c HP EWS (Windows) 99 PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 236 PDF files installing Adobe Acrobat Reader 19, 52 Percent of Normal Size setting print drivers 200 pop-up alerts 34 portrait orientation Flip Pages Up, HP PCL 6 print driver 209 print drivers 212 ports connecting 267 device conflicts 267 types included 4 PostScript Device settings, HP PS **Emulation Universal Print** Driver 223 postscript emulation fonts 118 PostScript Options, HP PS **Emulation Universal Print** Driver 170 PostScript Passthrough 226 PostScript settings HP EWS (Windows) 99 HP ToolboxFX 64 PPDs (PostScript printer definitions), Macintosh installation 236 presets (Macintosh) 244 Print all Text as Black print drivers 171

print cartridges Macintosh status 246 Print Data Optimization 22, 171 Print Density HP EWS (Windows) 101 HP ToolboxFX 66 Print Document On settings print drivers 199 print drivers about 21 About tab 227 Advanced Printing Features, enabling 169 Advanced tab 167 availability by operating system (Macintosh) 232 booklet printing 210 Color tab 214 Color Themes 217 constraint messages 166 Copy Count 168 Device Settings tab 219 diagnostics 26 Document Options 169, 206 document preview image 196, 217 download 114 Effects tab 198 External Fonts settings 221 Finishing tab 206 Font DIMM Installer 222 Font Substitution table 221 Form to Tray Assignment 220 Graphic settings 168 Help 166 Image Color Management (ICM) 169 included 3, 20 install by using a CD 128 Installable Options settings 223 Internet Services 218 JPEG Passthrough 226 languages, Windows 11 Layout Options 173 Macintosh 231, 233 orientation settings 212 Pages per Sheet 211 Paper Options 189 Paper/Output settings 168

Paper/Quality tab 188 PostScript Passthrough 226 Print All Text as Black 171 Print on Both Sides 207 Printer Features 171 Printing Preferences tab 164 Printing Shortcuts tab 174 Properties tab 164, 165 Resizing Options 198 Services tab 218 supported 23 TrueType font settings 169 version numbers 24 Watermarks settings 201 See also HP PCL 6 print driver; HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver Print Info Pages HP EWS (Windows) 92 HP ToolboxFX 41 print modes for paper types 67 Print Modes, HP ToolboxFX 69 Print on Both Sides print driver settings 207 Print pages on different paper 195 Print Quality HP EWS (Windows) 100 HP ToolboxFX 65 Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 236 Printer Features 171 printing Web pages 114 Printing Preferences tabs, print drivers 164 Printing settings HP EWS (Windows) 98 HP ToolboxFX 61 Printing Shortcuts tab print drivers 174 Product Information folder HP ToolboxFX 50 Product Registration, HP ToolboxFX 85 Properties tabs, print drivers 164, 165 protocols 224

Q

quality HP ImageREt 3600 27 print settings, HP ToolboxFX 65 Quick Sets. *See* Printing Shortcuts tab

R

Raster Compression HP PCL 6 print driver 171 versions, CD-ROMs Macintosh 234 Windows 11 registration, product 85 release notes 232 Remove red eye, HP PCL 6 print driver 197 reports, printing 41 resize documents Macintosh 244 Resizing Options, print drivers 198 resolution features 4 HP ImageREt 3600 27 HP ToolboxFX settings 65 Print Quality, HP EWS (Windows) 100 specifications 3 RGB settings 27, 28, 217

S

Save/Restore settings 74 scale documents Macintosh 244 Scale to Fit setting print drivers 199 scrubber utility 269 Send Ctrl-D settings 224 send fax driver languages, Windows 11 operating systems supported 23 Send TrueType as Bitmap HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 170 serial number 38 Service ID 38

Services tab Macintosh 246 print drivers 218 Set up E-mail Alerts, HP ToolboxFX 48 Set up Status Alerts, HP ToolboxFX 44 settings driver presets (Macintosh) 244 Settings tab, HP EWS (Windows) 94 setup and installation detailed for Windows 130 Shop for Supplies, HP ToolboxFX 85 shortcuts for print driver settings 174 sizes, paper driver settings 189 HP ToolboxFX settings 59 supported 256 SNMP settings HP EWS (Windows) 111 HP ToolboxFX 83 Source is settings 192 Special Pages 194 special paper quidelines 253 specifications features 3 speed print specifications 3 sRGB settings 27, 28, 217 status alerts setup, HP ToolboxFX 44 information, HP ToolboxFX 36 Macintosh services tab 246 of supplies, HP ToolboxFX 37 toner monitoring 113 Status folder, HP ToolboxFX 35 Status tab. HP EWS (Windows) 86 Supplies Status HP EWS (Windows) 88 HP ToolboxFX 37 supplies, ordering 85 supply-status, Services tab Macintosh 246

Support and Troubleshooting, HP ToolboxFX 85 support, product 85 system requirements HP ToolboxFX 33 System Setup HP EWS (Windows) 105 HP ToolboxFX 73 system-tray icon alerts 34

Т

TBCP output protocol, HP PS **Emulation Universal Print** Driver 224 text, printing all as black print drivers 171 timeout settings 225 ToolboxFX. See HP ToolboxFX trapping 216 tray 1 245, 254 See also trays trays capacities 4, 254 custom paper sizes 190 custom paper sizes supported 258 double-sided printing 245 driver Form to Tray Assignment 220 HP ToolboxFX settings 59 included 3 paper types supported 254 paper weights 254 Source is settings, drivers 192 troubleshooting Animated Demonstrations 56 constraint messages, print drivers 166 device conflicts 267 e-mail 269 File to E-mail utility 269 HP driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 26 Macintosh setup 241 pop-up alerts 34 scrubber utility 269 Services tab, drivers 218 Troubleshooting folder, HP ToolboxFX 52 TrueType font settings 225

TrueType fonts print driver settings 169 Send as Bitmaps, HP PCL 6 print driver 171 Send as Bitmaps, HP PS Emulation Universal Print Driver 170 two-sided printing print driver settings 207 Type is settings 192 types, paper driver settings 192 HP ToolboxFX settings 59 print modes 67 supported 256

U

uninstallation express 159 print-driver only installation 160 recommended 159 Windows product software 159 UNIX software downloads 126 usage log, color HP EWS 93 HP ToolboxFX 42 USB port connecting 267 device conflicts 267 devices vs. hubs 267 type included 4 User Guide, HP ToolboxFX 57 user guides localized versions 5 operating systems supported 232

V

version numbers, drivers 24

W

Wait Timeout settings 225 watermarks print drivers 201 Web sites downloading software 11 HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 26 HP Easy Printer Care 31

Linux software 126 Macintosh software 233 Windows device conflicts 267 uninstalling product software 159 Windows operating systems availability of software components 10 CD-ROM, print system 16 directory structure, CD-**ROM 11** driver versions 24 drivers supported 23 fonts supported 116 postscript emulation fonts supported 118 software installation types 127 supported 124

© 2008 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com

in vent